

## About Discrete mathematics

Discrete mathematics may be taken as real-world mathematics. It encourages students to examine problems on topic like reasoning, counting, combinatorial, etc. to explore the real world which are interesting and challenging. It teaches mathematical reasoning and proof techniques. A discrete mathematics course has more than one purpose. Students should learn a particular set of mathematical facts and how to apply them. In particular such a course teaches students how to think logically and mathematically. To achieve these goals, this text stresses mathematical reasoning and the different ways problems are solved. Five important themes in this course are: mathematical reasoning, combinatorial analysis, discrete structures, algorithmic thinking, and applications and modeling. A successful discrete mathematics course should carefully blend and balance all five themes. In this course we study first three themes.

**Mathematical Reasoning:** Students must understand mathematical reasoning in order to read, comprehend, and construct mathematical arguments. This text starts with a discussion of mathematical logic, which serves as the foundation for the subsequent discussions of methods of proof. Both the science and the art of constructing proofs are addressed. The technique of mathematical induction is stressed through many different types of examples of such proofs and a careful explanation of why mathematical induction is a valid proof technique.

**Combinatorial Analysis:** An important problem-solving skill is the ability to count or enumerate objects. Here we study the method of recurrence relation.

**Discrete Structures:** A course in discrete mathematics should teach students how to work with discrete structures, which are the abstract mathematical structures used to represent discrete objects and relationships between these objects. These discrete structures include sets, permutations, relations, graphs, semigroups, groups, ring and field.

## Unit I -- Logic and Induction

### Introduction

Logic is a set or a system of principles or rules. The rules of logic give precise meaning to mathematical statements. These rules are used to distinguish between valid and invalid mathematical arguments and specify the meaning of mathematical statements. Logic is the basis of all mathematical reasoning, and of all automated reasoning. Besides the importance of logic in understanding mathematical reasoning, logic has numerous applications to computer science.

These rules are used in the design of computer circuits, the construction of computer programs, the verification of the correctness of programs, and in many other ways. To understand mathematics, we must understand what makes up a correct mathematical argument, that is, a proof. Everyone knows that proofs are important throughout mathematics, but many people find it surprising how important proofs are in computer science. In fact, proofs are used to verify that computer programs produce the correct output for all possible input values, to show that algorithms always produce the correct result, to establish the security of a system, and to create artificial intelligence. Furthermore, automated reasoning systems have been created to allow computers to construct their own proofs. First, we will explain what makes up a correct mathematical argument and then introduce tools to construct these arguments.

### Proposition

Our discussion begins with an introduction to the basic building blocks of logic—propositions. A **proposition** is a declarative sentence that is either true or false, but not both.

**Example:** All the following declarative sentences are propositions.

1. Washington, D.C., is the capital of the United States of America.
2. Toronto is the capital of Canada.
3.  $1 + 1 = 2$ .
4.  $2 + 2 = 3$ .

Propositions 1 and 3 are true, whereas 2 and 4 are false.

**Example:** Consider the following sentences.

1. What time is it?
2. Read this carefully.
3.  $x + 1 = 2$ .
4.  $x + y = z$ .

Sentences 1 and 2 are not propositions because they are not declarative sentences. Sentences 3 and 4 are not propositions because they are neither true nor false. Note that each of sentences 3 and 4 can be turned into a proposition if we assign some values to the variables  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ .

We use letters to denote **propositional variables** (or **statement variables**), that is, variables that represent propositions, just as letters are used to denote numerical variables. The conventional

letters used for propositional variables are  $p, q, r, s, \dots$ . The **truth value** of a proposition is true, denoted by  $T$ , if it is a true proposition, and the truth value of a proposition is false, denoted by  $F$ , if it is a false proposition. The area of logic that deals with propositions is called the **propositional calculus** or **propositional logic**. It was first developed systematically by the Greek philosopher Aristotle more than 2300 years ago.

### Atomic propositions

Propositions that cannot be expressed in terms of simpler propositions are called **atomic propositions**.

### Compound propositions

Many mathematical statements are constructed by combining one or more atomic propositions by using logical operators. These are called compound propositions. Thus, **compound propositions** are formed from existing propositions using logical operators.

**Note:** To study the truth values of a compound statement we represent all the possible cases in a table called **truth table**.

### Negation

Let  $p$  be a proposition. The **negation of  $p$** , denoted by  $\neg p$ , is the statement “It is not the case that  $p$ .” The proposition  $\neg p$  is also read as “not  $p$ .” The truth value of  $\neg p$ , is the opposite of the truth value of  $p$ . The negation of a proposition can also be considered as the result of the operation of the **negation operator** on a proposition. The negation operator constructs a new proposition from a single existing proposition without loss of information, which alter the truth value of the original proposition. The Truth Table for the Negation of a Proposition is given below

$p$	$\neg p$
$T$	$F$
$F$	$T$

**Example:** Find the negation of the proposition “Michael’s PC runs Linux” and express this in simple English.

**Solution:** The negation is “It is not the case that Michael’s PC runs Linux.”

This negation can be more simply expressed as “Michael’s PC does not run Linux.”

**Example:** Find the negation of the proposition “Vandana’s smartphone has at least 32GB of memory” and express this in simple English.

**Solution:** The negation is “It is not the case that Vandana’s smartphone has at least 32GB of memory.”

This negation can also be expressed as “Vandana’s smartphone does not have at least 32GB of memory”

or even more simply as “Vandana’s smartphone has less than 32GB of memory.”

**Note:** The notation for the negation operator is not standardized, although  $\neg p$ ,  $\bar{p}$ ,  $\sim p$  and  $\bar{p}$  are the most common notations used in mathematics to express the negation of  $p$ .

### Connectives

We will now introduce the logical operators that are used to form new propositions from two or more existing propositions. These logical operators are also called **connectives**.

### Conjunction

Let  $p$  and  $q$  be propositions. The **conjunction** of  $p$  and  $q$ , denoted by  $p \wedge q$ , is the proposition “ $p$  and  $q$ .” The conjunction  $p \wedge q$  is true when both  $p$  and  $q$  are true and is false otherwise. The Truth Table for the conjunction  $p \wedge q$  is given below:

$p$	$q$	$p \wedge q$
$T$	$T$	$T$
$T$	$F$	$F$
$F$	$T$	$F$
$F$	$F$	$F$

**Example:** Find the conjunction of the propositions  $p$  and  $q$  where  $p$  is the proposition “Rebecca’s PC has more than 16 GB free hard disk space” and  $q$  is the proposition “The processor in Rebecca’s PC runs faster than 1 GHz.”

**Solution:** The conjunction of these propositions is the proposition “Rebecca’s PC has more than 16 GB free hard disk space, and the processor in Rebecca’s PC runs faster than 1 GHz.” This conjunction can be expressed more simply as “Rebecca’s PC has more than 16 GB free hard disk

space, and its processor runs faster than 1 GHz.” For this conjunction to be true, both conditions given must be true. It is false, when one or both of these conditions are false.

**Note:** In logic the word “but” sometimes is used instead of “and” in a conjunction. For example, the statement “The sun is shining, but it is raining” is another way of saying “The sun is shining and it is raining.”

### Disjunction

Let  $p$  and  $q$  be propositions. The **disjunction** of  $p$  and  $q$ , denoted by  $p \vee q$ , is the proposition “ $p$  or  $q$ .” The disjunction  $p \vee q$  is false when both  $p$  and  $q$  are false and is true otherwise. The Truth Table for the disjunction  $p \vee q$  is given below

$p$	$q$	$p \vee q$
$T$	$T$	$T$
$T$	$F$	$T$
$F$	$T$	$T$
$F$	$F$	$F$

**Example:** Translate the statement “Students who have taken calculus or introductory computer science can take this class” in a statement in propositional logic using the propositions  $p$ : “A student who has taken calculus can take this class” and  $q$ : “A student who has taken introductory computer science can take this class.”

**Solution:** We assume that this statement means that students who have taken both calculus and Introductory computer science can take the class, as well as the students who have taken only one of the two subjects. Hence, this statement can be expressed as  $p \vee q$ , the disjunction of  $p$  and  $q$ .

**Note:** There are two types of ‘or’ are used in English, **inclusive or** and **exclusive or**. The use of the connective ‘or’ in a disjunction corresponds to ‘**inclusive or**’. For instance, the inclusive or is being used in the previous example. On the other hand, we are using the **exclusive or** when we say “Students who have taken calculus or computer science, but not both, can enroll in this class.” Here, we mean that students who have taken both calculus and a computer science course cannot take the class. Only those who have taken exactly one of the two courses can take the class. In everyday conversation when we say “ $p$  or  $q$ ” we mean  $p$  is true or  $q$  is true, but not both

$p$  and  $q$  are true. For example, “the door is open or the door is closed.” Similarly, when a menu at a restaurant states, “Soup or salad comes with an entrée,” the restaurant almost always means that customers can have either soup or salad, but not both. Hence, this is an exclusive, rather than an inclusive or. In this course we refer to ‘inclusive or’ whenever we use ‘or’.

### Exclusive or

The **exclusive or** of two propositions  $p$  and  $q$ , denoted by  $p \oplus q$ , is the proposition “Either  $p$  or  $q$ ”. The proposition  $p \oplus q$  is true when exactly one of  $p$  and  $q$  is true and is false otherwise.

$p$	$q$	$p \oplus q$
$T$	$T$	$F$
$T$	$F$	$T$
$F$	$T$	$T$
$F$	$F$	$F$

**Example:** Express the statement “I will use all my savings to travel to Europe or to buy an electric car” in propositional logic using the statement  $p$ : “I will use all my savings to travel to Europe” and the statement  $q$ : “I will use all my savings to buy an electric car.”

**Solution:** To translate this statement, we first note that the or in this statement must be an exclusive or because this person can either use all his or her savings to travel to Europe or use all these savings to buy an electric car, but cannot both go to Europe and buy an electric car. (This is clear because either option requires all his savings.) Hence, this statement can be expressed as  $p \oplus q$ .

### Conditional statement

Let  $p$  and  $q$  be propositions. The **conditional statement**  $p \rightarrow q$  is the proposition “if  $p$  then  $q$ .” The conditional statement  $p \rightarrow q$  is false when  $p$  is true and  $q$  is false, and true otherwise. In the conditional statement  $p \rightarrow q$ ,  $p$  is called the hypothesis and  $q$  is called the conclusion.

$p$	$q$	$p \rightarrow q$
$T$	$T$	$T$
$T$	$F$	$F$
$F$	$T$	$T$
$F$	$F$	$T$

**Example:** Let  $p$  be the statement “Maria learns discrete mathematics” and  $q$  the statement “Maria will find a good job.” Express the statement  $p \rightarrow q$  as a statement in English.

**Solution:** From the definition of conditional statements, we see that when  $p$  is the statement “Maria learns discrete mathematics” and  $q$  is the statement “Maria will find a good job,”  $p \rightarrow q$  represents the statement

“If Maria learns discrete mathematics then she will find a good job.”

There are many other ways to express this conditional statement in English. Among the most natural of these are:

“Maria will find a good job when she learns discrete mathematics.”

“For Maria to get a good job, it is sufficient for her to learn discrete mathematics.”

“Maria will find a good job unless she does not learn discrete mathematics.”

Because conditional statements play such an essential role in mathematical reasoning, a variety of terminology is used to express  $p \rightarrow q$ . You will encounter most if not all of the following ways to express this conditional statement:

if  $p$ , then  $q$

$p$  implies  $q$

if  $p$ ,  $q$

$p$  only if  $q$

$p$  is sufficient for  $q$

a sufficient condition for  $q$  is  $p$

$q$  if  $p$

$q$  whenever  $p$

$q$  when  $p$

$q$  is necessary for  $p$

a necessary condition for  $p$  is  $q$

$q$  follows from  $p$

$q$  unless  $\neg p$

$q$  provided that  $p$

**Note:** A useful way to understand the truth value of a conditional statement is to think of an obligation or a contract. For example, the pledge many politicians make when election comes,

“If I am elected, then I will lower petrol price.”

If the politician is elected, voters would expect this politician to lower petrol price. Furthermore, if the politician is not elected, then voters will not have any expectation that this person will lower petrol price, although the person may have sufficient influence to cause those in power to lower petrol price. It is only when the politician is elected but does not lower petrol price that voters

can say that the politician has broken the campaign pledge. This last scenario corresponds to the case when  $p$  is true but  $q$  is false in  $p \rightarrow q$ .

**Note:** Some people have difficulty using the truth table for  $p \rightarrow q$  because of this ambiguity in English. Suppose that I hold an ordinary playing card (with its back to you) and say “If this card is a heart, then it is a queen.” In which of the following four circumstances would you say I lied:

1. the card is a heart and a queen
2. the card is a heart and a king
3. the card is a diamond and a queen
4. the card is a diamond and a king

You would certainly say I lied in the case the card is the king of hearts, and you would certainly say I didn’t lie if the card is the queen of hearts. What about the other two? Hopefully in this example, the inconsistency of English language seems out of place to you and you would not say I am a liar in either of the other cases. Now we apply the principle called the principle of the excluded middle, “A statement is true exactly when it is not false.” This principle tells us that that my statement is true in these two cases where you wouldn’t say I lied.

**Note:** The way we have defined conditional statements is more general than the meaning attached to such statements in the English language. For instance, the conditional statement

“If it is sunny, then we will go to the beach”

is true unless it is indeed sunny, but we do not go to the beach. On the other hand, the statement

“If Juan has a smartphone, then  $2 + 3 = 5$ ”

is true from the definition of a conditional statement, because its conclusion is true. The conditional statement

“If Juan has a smartphone, then  $2 + 3 = 6$ ”

is true if Juan does not have a smartphone, even though  $2 + 3 = 6$  is false.

We would not use these last two conditional statements in natural language, because there is no relationship between the hypothesis and the conclusion in either statement. In mathematical reasoning, we consider conditional statements of a more general sort than we use in English. The mathematical concept of a conditional statement is independent of a cause and effect relationship between hypothesis and conclusion. Our definition of a conditional statement



specifies its truth values; it is not based on English usage. Propositional language is an artificial language; we only parallel English usage to make it easy to use and remember.

### Biconditional

Let  $p$  and  $q$  be propositions. The **biconditional** statement  $p \leftrightarrow q$  is the proposition “ $p$  if and only if  $q$ .” The biconditional statement  $p \leftrightarrow q$  is true when  $p$  and  $q$  have the same truth values, and is false otherwise. Biconditional statements are also called bi-implications.

$p$	$q$	$p \leftrightarrow q$
$T$	$T$	$T$
$T$	$F$	$F$
$F$	$T$	$F$
$F$	$F$	$T$

**Example:** Let  $p$  be the statement “You can take the flight,” and let  $q$  be the statement “You buy a ticket.” Then biconditional statement  $p \leftrightarrow q$  is the statement

“You can take the flight if and only if you buy a ticket.”

There are some other common ways to express  $p \leftrightarrow q$ :

“ $p$  is necessary and sufficient for  $q$ .”

“if  $p$  then  $q$ , and conversely.”

“ $p$  if and only if  $q$ .”

“ $p$  exactly when  $q$ .”

**Note:** We should be aware that biconditionals are not always explicit in natural language. In particular, the “if and only if” construction used in biconditionals is rarely used in common language. Instead, biconditionals are often expressed using an “if, then” or an “only if” construction. The other part of the “if and only if” is implicit. That is, the converse is implied, but not stated. For example, consider the statement in English “If you finish your meal, then you can have dessert.” What is really meant is “You can have dessert if and only if you finish your meal.” This last statement is logically equivalent to the two statements “If you finish your meal, then you can have dessert” and “You can have dessert only if you finish your meal.” Because of this imprecision in natural language, we need to make an assumption whether a conditional statement in natural language implicitly includes its converse. Because precision is essential in

mathematics and in logic, we will always distinguish between the conditional statement  $p \rightarrow q$  and the biconditional statement  $p \leftrightarrow q$ .

### Tautology, contradiction and contingency

A compound proposition that is always true, no matter what the truth values of the propositional variables that occur in it, is called a **tautology**. A compound proposition that is always false is called a **contradiction**. A compound proposition that is neither a tautology nor a contradiction is called a **contingency**.

**Example:** We can construct examples of tautologies and contradictions using just one propositional variable. Consider the truth tables of  $p \vee \neg p$  and  $p \wedge \neg p$ .

$p$	$\neg p$	$p \vee \neg p$	$p \wedge \neg p$
$T$	$F$	$T$	$F$
$F$	$T$	$T$	$F$

Because  $p \vee \neg p$  is always true, it is a tautology. Because  $p \wedge \neg p$  is always false, it is a contradiction.

### Converse, Inverse, and Contrapositive

We can form some new conditional statements starting with a conditional statement  $p \rightarrow q$ . In particular, there are three related conditional statements that occur so often that they have special names.

- (i) The proposition  $q \rightarrow p$  is called the **converse** of  $p \rightarrow q$ .
- (ii) The proposition  $\neg p \rightarrow \neg q$  is called the **inverse** of  $p \rightarrow q$ .
- (iii) The **contrapositive** of  $p \rightarrow q$  is the proposition  $\neg q \rightarrow \neg p$ .

**Example:** What are the contrapositive, the converse, and the inverse of the conditional statement

“The home team wins whenever it is raining?”

**Solution:** Because “ $q$  whenever  $p$ ” is one of the ways to express the conditional statement  $p \rightarrow q$ , the original statement can be rewritten as

“If it is raining, then the home team wins.”

Consequently, the contrapositive of this conditional statement is:

“If the home team does not win, then it is not raining.”

The converse is: “If the home team wins, then it is raining.”

The inverse is: “If it is not raining, then the home team does not win.”

## Some Applications of Propositional Logic

Logic has many important applications to mathematics, computer science, and numerous other disciplines. Statements in mathematics and the sciences and in natural language often are imprecise or ambiguous. To make such statements precise, they can be translated into the language of logic. For example, logic is used in the specification of software and hardware, because these specifications need to be precise before development begins. Furthermore, propositional logic and its rules can be used to design computer circuits, to construct computer programs, to verify the correctness of programs, and to build expert systems. Logic can be used to analyze and solve many familiar puzzles. Software systems based on the rules of logic have been developed for constructing some, but not all, types of proofs automatically.

**Translating English Sentences:** There are many reasons to translate English sentences into expressions involving propositional variables and logical connectives. In particular, English is often ambiguous and translating sentences into compound statements removes the ambiguity. Moreover, once we have translated sentences from English into logical expressions, we can analyze these logical expressions to determine their truth values and we can manipulate them.

**System Specifications:** Translating sentences in natural language (such as English) into logical expressions is an essential part of specifying both hardware and software systems. System and software engineers take requirements in natural language and produce precise and unambiguous specifications that can be used as the basis for system development. System specifications should be **consistent**, that is, they should not contain conflicting requirements that could be used to derive a contradiction. When specifications are not consistent, there would be no way to develop a system that satisfies all specifications.

**Example:** Determine whether these system specifications are consistent:

“The diagnostic message is stored in the buffer or it is retransmitted.”

“The diagnostic message is not stored in the buffer.”

“If the diagnostic message is stored in the buffer, then it is retransmitted.”

**Solution:** To determine whether these specifications are consistent, we first express them using logical expressions. Let  $p$  denote “The diagnostic message is stored in the buffer” and let  $q$  denote “The diagnostic message is retransmitted.” The specifications can then be written as  $p \vee q$ ,  $\neg p$ , and  $p \rightarrow q$ . An assignment of truth values that makes all three specifications true must have  $p$  false to make  $\neg p$  true. Because we want  $p \vee q$  to be true but  $p$  must be false,  $q$  must be true. Because  $p \rightarrow q$  is true when  $p$  is false and  $q$  is true, we conclude that these specifications are consistent, because they are all true when  $p$  is false and  $q$  is true. We could come to the same conclusion by use of a truth table to examine the four possible assignments of truth values to  $p$  and  $q$ .

$p$	$q$	$\neg p$	$p \vee q$	$p \rightarrow q$
$T$	$T$	$F$	$T$	$T$
$T$	$F$	$F$	$T$	$F$
$F$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$
$F$	$F$	$T$	$F$	$T$

**Logic Puzzles:** Puzzles that can be solved using logical reasoning are known as **logic puzzles**. Solving logic puzzles is an excellent way to practice working with the rules of logic. Also, computer programs designed to carry out logical reasoning often use well-known logic puzzles to illustrate their capabilities. Many people enjoy solving logic puzzles, published in periodicals, books, and on the Web, as a recreational activity.

**Example:** A father tells his two children, a boy and a girl, to play in their backyard without getting dirty. However, while playing, both children get mud on their foreheads. When the children stop playing, the father says “At least one of you has a muddy forehead,” and then asks the children to answer “Yes” or “No” to the question: “Do you know whether you have a muddy forehead?” The father asks this question twice. What will the children answer each time this question is asked, assuming that a child can see whether his or her sibling has a muddy forehead, but cannot see his or her own forehead? Assume that both children are honest and that the children answer each question simultaneously.

**Solution:** Let  $s$  be the statement that the son has a muddy forehead and let  $d$  be the statement that the daughter has a muddy forehead. When the father says that at least one of the two

children has a muddy forehead, he is stating that the disjunction  $s \vee d$  is true. Both children will answer “No” the first time the question is asked because each sees mud on the other child’s forehead. That is, the son knows that  $d$  is true, but does not know whether  $s$  is true, and the daughter knows that  $s$  is true, but does not know whether  $d$  is true. After the son has answered “No” to the first question, the daughter can determine that  $d$  must be true. This follows because when the first question is asked, the son knows that  $s \vee d$  is true, but cannot determine whether  $s$  is true. Using this information, the daughter can conclude that  $d$  must be true, for if  $d$  were false, the son could have reasoned that because  $s \vee d$  is true, then  $s$  must be true, and he would have answered “Yes” to the first question. The son can reason in a similar way to determine that  $s$  must be true. It follows that both children answer “Yes” the second time the question is asked.

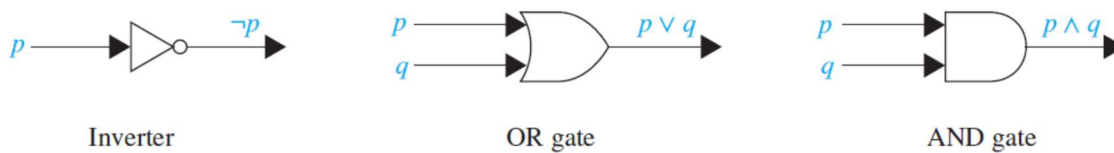
**Example:** An island has two kinds of inhabitants, knights, who always tell the truth, and their opposites, knaves, who always lie. You encounter two people  $A$  and  $B$ . What are  $A$  and  $B$  if  $A$  says “ $B$  is a knight” and  $B$  says “The two of us are opposite types?”

**Solution:** Let  $p$  and  $q$  be the statements that  $A$  is a knight and  $B$  is a knight, respectively, so that  $\neg p$  and  $\neg q$  are the statements that  $A$  is a knave and  $B$  is a knave, respectively. We first consider the possibility that  $A$  is a knight; this is the statement that  $p$  is true. If  $A$  is a knight, then he is telling the truth when he says that  $B$  is a knight, so that  $q$  is true, and  $A$  and  $B$  are the same type. However, if  $B$  is a knight, then  $B$ ’s statement that  $A$  and  $B$  are of opposite types, the statement  $(p \wedge \neg q) \vee (\neg p \wedge q)$ , would have to be true, which it is not, because  $A$  and  $B$  are both knights. Consequently, we can conclude that  $A$  is not a knight, that is, that  $p$  is false. If  $A$  is a knave, then because everything a knave says is false,  $A$ ’s statement that  $B$  is a knight, that is, that  $q$  is true, is a lie. This means that  $q$  is false and  $B$  is also a knave. Furthermore, if  $B$  is a knave, then  $B$ ’s statement that  $A$  and  $B$  are opposite types is a lie, which is consistent with both  $A$  and  $B$  being knaves. We can conclude that both  $A$  and  $B$  are knaves.

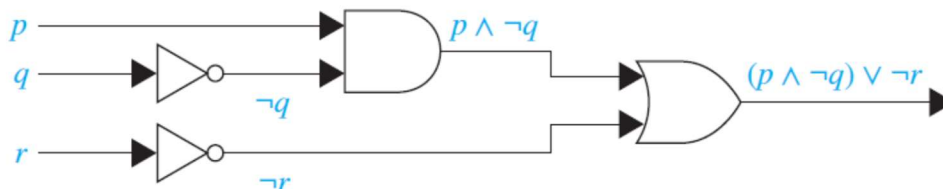
**Boolean Searches:** Logical connectives are used extensively in searches of large collections of information, such as indexes of Web pages. Because these searches employ techniques from propositional logic, they are called **Boolean searches**. In Boolean searches, the connective **AND** is used to match records that contain both of two search terms, the connective **OR** is used to match one or both of two search terms, and the connective **NOT** (sometimes written as **AND NOT**) is used to exclude a particular search term. Careful planning of how logical connectives are

used is often required when Boolean searches are used to locate information of potential interest.

**Logic Circuits:** Propositional logic can be applied to the design of computer hardware. A **logic circuit** (or **digital circuit**) receives input signals  $p_1, p_2, \dots, p_n$ , each a bit [either 0 (off) or 1 (on)], and produces output signals  $s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n$ , each a bit. In this section we will restrict our attention to logic circuits with a single output signal; in general, digital circuits may have multiple outputs. Complicated digital circuits can be constructed from three basic circuits, called **gates**, as shown in the bellow figure.



The **inverter**, or **NOT gate**, takes an input bit  $p$ , and produces as output  $\neg p$ . The **OR gate** takes two input signals  $p$  and  $q$ , each a bit, and produces as output the signal  $p \vee q$ . Finally, the **AND gate** takes two input signals  $p$  and  $q$ , each a bit, and produces as output the signal  $p \wedge q$ . We use combinations of these three basic gates to build more complicated circuits, such as that shown in the bellow figure.



## Propositional Equivalences

An important type of step used in a mathematical argument is the replacement of a statement with another statement with the same truth value. We can see that of the three conditional statements convers, invers and contrapositive formed from  $p \rightarrow q$ , only the contrapositive always has the same truth value as  $p \rightarrow q$ .

$p$	$q$	$p \rightarrow q$	$\neg q$	$\neg p$	$q \rightarrow p$	$\neg p \rightarrow \neg q$	$\neg q \rightarrow \neg p$
$T$	$T$	$T$	$F$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$T$
$T$	$F$	$F$	$T$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$F$
$F$	$T$	$T$	$F$	$T$	$F$	$F$	$T$

$F$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

**Equivalent Statements:** When two compound propositions always have the same truth values, regardless of the truth values of its propositional variables, we call them **equivalent**. A conditional statement and its contrapositive are equivalent. Also, the converse and the inverse of a conditional statement are also equivalent, but neither is equivalent to the original conditional statement. The notation  $r \equiv s$  denotes that  $r$  and  $s$  are logically equivalent.

**Example:**  $p \rightarrow q \equiv \neg p \vee q$ .

$p$	$q$	$p \rightarrow q$	$\neg p$	$\neg p \vee q$
$T$	$T$	$T$	$F$	$T$
$T$	$F$	$F$	$F$	$F$
$F$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$
$F$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$T$

**Example:** The proposition  $p \leftrightarrow q$  and  $(p \rightarrow q) \wedge (q \rightarrow p)$  are equivalent.

$p$	$q$	$p \leftrightarrow q$	$p \rightarrow q$	$q \rightarrow p$	$(p \rightarrow q) \wedge (q \rightarrow p)$
$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$
$T$	$F$	$F$	$F$	$T$	$F$
$F$	$T$	$F$	$T$	$F$	$F$
$F$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$

**Example:** A conditional statement and its contrapositive are equivalent. Also, the converse and the inverse of a conditional statement are also equivalent.

**Example: De Morgan's Laws.**  $\neg(p \wedge q) \equiv \neg p \vee \neg q$ ;  $\neg(p \vee q) \equiv \neg p \wedge \neg q$ .

$p$	$q$	$\neg p$	$\neg q$	$p \wedge q$	$p \vee q$	$\neg(p \wedge q)$	$\neg p \vee \neg q$	$\neg(p \vee q)$	$\neg p \wedge \neg q$
$T$	$T$	$F$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$F$	$F$	$F$	$F$
$T$	$F$	$F$	$T$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$F$	$F$
$F$	$T$	$T$	$F$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$F$	$F$
$F$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$F$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$

**Example:** Use De Morgan's laws to express the negations of "Miguel has a cell phone and he has a laptop computer" and "Heather will go to the concert or Steve will go to the concert."

**Solution:** Let  $p$  be “Miguel has a cell phone” and  $q$  be “Miguel has a laptop computer.” Then “Miguel has a cell phone and he has a laptop computer” can be represented by  $p \wedge q$ . By the first of De Morgan’s laws,  $\neg(p \wedge q)$  is equivalent to  $\neg p \vee \neg q$ . Consequently, we can express the negation of our original statement as “Miguel does not have a cell phone or he does not have a laptop computer.” Let  $r$  be “Heather will go to the concert” and  $s$  be “Steve will go to the concert.” Then “Heather will go to the concert or Steve will go to the concert” can be represented by  $r \vee s$ . By the second of De Morgan’s laws,  $\neg(r \vee s)$  is equivalent to  $\neg r \wedge \neg s$ . Consequently, we can express the negation of our original statement as “Heather will not go to the concert and Steve will not go to the concert.” This can be simply written as “neither Heather nor Steve will go to the concert.”

**Note:** The compound propositions  $r$  and  $s$  are logically equivalent if  $r \leftrightarrow s$  is a tautology. The symbol  $\equiv$  is not a logical connective, and  $r \equiv s$  is not a compound proposition but rather is the statement that  $r \leftrightarrow s$  is a tautology. The symbol  $\leftrightarrow$  is sometimes used instead of  $\equiv$  to denote logical equivalence.

### Some Important Equivalence

In the following equivalences,  $T$  denotes the compound proposition that is always true and  $F$  denotes the compound proposition that is always false.

<i>Equivalence</i>	<i>Name</i>
$p \wedge T \equiv p; p \vee F \equiv p$	Identity laws
$p \vee T \equiv T; p \wedge F \equiv F$	Domination laws
$p \vee p \equiv p; p \wedge p \equiv p$	Idempotent laws
$p \vee \neg p \equiv T; p \wedge \neg p \equiv F$	Negation laws
$\neg(\neg p) \equiv p$	Double negation law
$p \vee q \equiv q \vee p; p \wedge q \equiv q \wedge p$	Commutative laws
$(p \vee q) \vee r \equiv p \vee (q \vee r); (p \wedge q) \wedge r \equiv p \wedge (q \wedge r)$	Associative laws
$p \vee (p \wedge q) \equiv p; p \wedge (p \vee q) \equiv p$	Absorption laws
$p \vee (q \wedge r) \equiv (p \vee q) \wedge (p \vee r); p \wedge (q \vee r) \equiv (p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r)$	Distributive laws
$\neg(p \wedge q) \equiv \neg p \vee \neg q; \neg(p \vee q) \equiv \neg p \wedge \neg q$	De Morgan’s laws

### Some more Logical Equivalences

$p \rightarrow q \equiv \neg p \vee q$
$p \rightarrow q \equiv \neg q \rightarrow \neg p$
$p \vee q \equiv \neg p \rightarrow q$
$p \wedge q \equiv \neg(p \rightarrow \neg q)$
$\neg(p \rightarrow q) \equiv p \wedge \neg q$



$(p \rightarrow q) \wedge (p \rightarrow r) \equiv p \rightarrow (q \wedge r)$
$(p \rightarrow r) \wedge (q \rightarrow r) \equiv (p \vee q) \rightarrow r$
$(p \rightarrow q) \vee (p \rightarrow r) \equiv p \rightarrow (q \vee r)$
$(p \rightarrow r) \vee (q \rightarrow r) \equiv (p \wedge q) \rightarrow r$
$p \leftrightarrow q \equiv (p \rightarrow q) \wedge (q \rightarrow p)$
$p \leftrightarrow q \equiv \neg p \leftrightarrow \neg q$
$p \leftrightarrow q \equiv (p \wedge q) \vee (\neg p \wedge \neg q)$
$\neg(p \leftrightarrow q) \equiv p \leftrightarrow \neg q$

**Well-formed formula:** A proposition formula is said to be well formed formula if it has the following properties:

1. Every atomic proposition is well-formed formula.
2. If  $p$  is wff, then  $\neg p$  is also well-formed formula.
3. If  $p$  and  $q$  are well-formed formula, then  $p \vee q, p \wedge q$  and  $p \rightarrow q$  are well-formed formula.
4. Nothing else is well-formed formula.

**Example:** The proposition  $(p \wedge q) \vee r$  is a well-formed-formula whereas  $p \wedge q \vee r$  is not well-formed formula. To evaluate the formula  $p \wedge q \vee r$  we can apply  $\wedge$  first and then  $\vee$  or apply  $\vee$  first and then  $\wedge$ . That is we have two formulae  $(p \wedge q) \vee r$  and  $p \wedge (q \vee r)$ .

$p$	$q$	$r$	$p \wedge q$	$(p \wedge q) \vee r$	$q \vee r$	$p \wedge (q \vee r)$
$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$
$T$	$T$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$
$T$	$F$	$T$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$T$
$T$	$F$	$F$	$F$	$F$	$F$	$F$
$F$	$T$	$T$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$F$
$F$	$T$	$F$	$F$	$F$	$T$	$F$
$F$	$F$	$T$	$F$	$T$	$T$	$F$
$F$	$F$	$F$	$F$	$F$	$F$	$F$

From the above truth table, it is clear that  $(p \wedge q) \vee r$  and  $p \wedge (q \vee r)$  have different truth values. So, they are not equivalent. So  $p \wedge q \vee r$  is not well-formed formula.

**Rules of Precedence:** If a given formula is not well-formed formula, then we can convert it into a well-formed formula by using the order of Precedence of Logical Operators which is as follows:

Operators	Precedence
$\neg$	1
$\wedge$	2
$\vee \oplus$	3
$\rightarrow$	4
$\leftrightarrow$	5

**Functionally complete set of connectives:** A set of connectives is called functionally complete if every compound proposition can be expressed as a logically equivalent proposition involving only these connectives.

**Example:** The sets  $\{\neg, \wedge\}$ ,  $\{\neg, \vee\}$  and  $\{\neg, \wedge, \vee\}$  are functionally complete.

**Satisfiable:** A compound proposition is **satisfiable** if there is an assignment of truth values to its variables that makes it true (that is, when it is a tautology or a contingency). When no such assignment exists, that is, when the compound proposition is false for all assignments of truth values to its variables, the compound proposition is **unsatisfiable**. Note that a compound proposition is unsatisfiable if and only if its negation is true for all assignments of truth values to the variables, that is, if and only if its negation is a tautology.

**Example:** Determine whether each of the compound propositions is satisfiable.

- (i)  $(p \vee \neg q) \wedge (q \vee \neg r) \wedge (r \vee \neg p)$ .
- (ii)  $(p \vee q \vee r) \wedge (\neg p \vee \neg q \vee \neg r)$
- (iii)  $(p \vee \neg q) \wedge (q \vee \neg r) \wedge (r \vee \neg p) \wedge (p \vee q \vee r) \wedge (\neg p \vee \neg q \vee \neg r)$

**Solution:**

- (i) Note that  $(p \vee \neg q) \wedge (q \vee \neg r) \wedge (r \vee \neg p)$  is true when the three variables  $p$ ,  $q$ , and  $r$  have the same truth value. Hence, it is satisfiable.

$p$	$q$	$r$	$\neg p$	$\neg q$	$\neg r$	$p \vee \neg q$	$q \vee \neg r$	$r \vee \neg p$	$(p \vee \neg q) \wedge (q \vee \neg r) \wedge (r \vee \neg p)$
-----	-----	-----	----------	----------	----------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------------	---

T	T	T	F	F	F	T	T	T	T
T	T	F	F	F	T	T	T	F	F
T	F	T	F	T	F	T	F	T	F
T	F	F	F	T	T	T	T	F	F
F	T	T	T	F	F	F	T	T	F
F	T	F	T	F	T	F	T	T	F
F	F	T	T	T	F	T	F	T	F
F	F	F	T	T	T	T	T	T	T

Instead of using a truth table to solve this problem, we will reason about truth values.

- (ii) Similarly, note that  $(p \vee q \vee r) \wedge (\neg p \vee \neg q \vee \neg r)$  is true when at least one of  $p$ ,  $q$ , and  $r$  is true and at least one is false. Hence,  $(p \vee q \vee r) \wedge (\neg p \vee \neg q \vee \neg r)$  is satisfiable.
- (iii) Finally, note that for  $(p \vee \neg q) \wedge (q \vee \neg r) \wedge (r \vee \neg p) \wedge (p \vee q \vee r) \wedge (\neg p \vee \neg q \vee \neg r)$  to be true,  $(p \vee \neg q) \wedge (q \vee \neg r) \wedge (r \vee \neg p)$  and  $(p \vee q \vee r) \wedge (\neg p \vee \neg q \vee \neg r)$  must both be true. For the first to be true, the three variables must have the same truth values, and for the second to be true, at least one of the three variables must be true and at least one must be false. However, these conditions are contradictory. From these observations we conclude that no assignment of truth values to  $p, q$ , and  $r$  makes  $(p \vee \neg q) \wedge (q \vee \neg r) \wedge (r \vee \neg p) \wedge (p \vee q \vee r) \wedge (\neg p \vee \neg q \vee \neg r)$  true. Hence, it is unsatisfiable.

## Exercises—1.1, 1.2 and 1.3.

### Predicates and Quantifiers

Propositional logic cannot adequately express the meaning of all statements in mathematics and in natural language. For example, suppose that we know that

“Every computer connected to the university network is functioning properly.”

And “MATH3 is one of the computers connected to the university network.

No rules of propositional logic allow us to conclude the truth of the statement

“MATH3 is functioning properly,”

Likewise, we cannot use the rules of propositional logic to conclude from the statement

“CS2 is under attack by an intruder,”

and “CS2 is a computer on the university network”, to conclude the truth of

“There is a computer on the university network that is under attack by an intruder.”

A more powerful type of logic called **predicate logic** can be used to express the meaning of a wide range of statements in mathematics and computer science in ways that permit us to reason and explore relationships between objects. To understand predicate logic, we first need to introduce the concept of a predicate. Afterward, we will introduce the notion of quantifiers, which enable us to reason with statements that assert that a certain property holds for all objects of a certain type and with statements that assert the existence of an object with a particular property.

Predicates is the part of a sentence or clause containing a verb and stating something about the subject. Statements involving variables, such as “ $x > 3$ ,” “ $x = y + 3$ ,” “ $x + y = z$ ,” and “computer  $x$  is under attack by an intruder,” and “computer  $x$  is functioning properly,” are often found in mathematical assertions, in computer programs, and in system specifications. These statements are neither true nor false when the values of the variables are not specified. In this section, we will discuss the ways that propositions can be produced from such statements. The statement “ $x$  is greater than 3” has two parts. The first part, the variable  $x$ , is the subject of the statement. The second part—the **predicate**, “is greater than 3”—refers to a property that the subject of the statement can have. We can denote the statement “ $x$  is greater than 3” by  $P(x)$ , where  $P$  denotes the predicate “is greater than 3” and  $x$  is the variable. The statement  $P(x)$  is also said to be the value of the **propositional function**  $P$  at  $x$ . Once a value has been assigned to the variable  $x$ , the statement  $P(x)$  becomes a proposition and has a truth value.

**Example:** Let  $A(x)$  denote the statement “Computer  $x$  is under attack by an intruder.” Suppose that of the computers on campus, only CS2 and MATH1 are currently under attack by intruders. What are truth values of  $A(\text{CS1})$ ,  $A(\text{CS2})$ , and  $A(\text{MATH1})$ ?

**Solution:** We obtain the statement  $A(\text{CS1})$  by setting  $x = \text{CS1}$  in the statement “Computer  $x$  is under attack by an intruder.” Because CS1 is not on the list of computers currently under attack, we conclude that  $A(\text{CS1})$  is false. Similarly, because CS2 and MATH1 are on the list of computers under attack, we say that  $A(\text{CS2})$  and  $A(\text{MATH1})$  are true.

**Example:** Let  $Q(x, y)$  denote the statement “ $x = y + 3$ .” What are the truth values of the propositions  $Q(1, 2)$  and  $Q(3, 0)$ ?

**Solution:** To obtain  $Q(1, 2)$ , set  $x = 1$  and  $y = 2$  in the statement  $Q(x, y)$ . Hence,  $Q(1, 2)$  is the statement “ $1 = 2 + 3$ ,” which is false. The statement  $Q(3, 0)$  is the proposition “ $3 = 0 + 3$ ,” which is true.

Quantifier is a determiner or pronoun indicative of quantity. When the variables in a propositional function are assigned values, the resulting statement becomes a proposition with a certain truth value. However, there is another important way, called **quantification**, to create a proposition from a propositional function. Quantification expresses the extent to which a predicate is true over a range of elements. In English, the words *all*, *some*, *many*, *none*, and *few* are used in quantifications. We will focus on two types of quantification here: universal quantification, which tells us that a predicate is true for every element under consideration, and existential quantification, which tells us that there is one or more element under consideration for which the predicate is true. The area of logic that deals with predicates and quantifiers is called the **predicate calculus**.

**The Universal Quantifier:** Many mathematical statements assert that a property is true for all values of a variable in a particular domain, called the **domain of discourse** (or the **universe of discourse**), often just referred to as the **domain**. Such a statement is expressed using universal quantification. The universal quantification of  $P(x)$  for a particular domain is the proposition that asserts that  $P(x)$  is true for all values of  $x$  in this domain. Note that the domain specifies the possible values of the variable  $x$ . The meaning of the universal quantification of  $P(x)$  changes when we change the domain. The domain must always be specified when a universal quantifier is used; without it, the universal quantification of a statement is not defined.

The **universal quantification** of  $P(x)$  is the statement

“ $P(x)$  for all values of  $x$  in the domain.”

The notation  $\forall x P(x)$  denotes the universal quantification of  $P(x)$ . Here  $\forall$  is called the **universal quantifier**. We read  $\forall x P(x)$  as “for all  $x$ ,  $P(x)$ ” or “for every  $x$ ,  $P(x)$ .” An element for which  $P(x)$  is false is called a **counterexample** of  $\forall x P(x)$ .

**Example:** Let  $P(x)$  be the statement “ $x + 1 > x$ .” What is the truth value of the quantification  $\forall x P(x)$ , where the domain consists of all real numbers?

**Solution:** Because  $P(x)$  is true for all real numbers  $x$ , the quantification  $\forall x P(x)$  is true.

**Example:** Let  $Q(x)$  be the statement " $x < 2$ ." What is the truth value of the quantification  $\forall x Q(x)$ , where the domain consists of all real numbers?

**Solution:**  $Q(x)$  is not true for every real number  $x$ , because, for instance,  $Q(3)$  is false. That is,  $x = 3$  is a counterexample for the statement  $\forall x Q(x)$ . Thus  $\forall x Q(x)$  is false.

**Example:** What is the truth value of  $\forall x P(x)$ , where  $P(x)$  is the statement " $x^2 < 10$ " and the domain consists of the positive integers not exceeding 4?

**Solution:** The statement  $\forall x P(x)$  is the same as the conjunction  $P(1) \wedge P(2) \wedge P(3) \wedge P(4)$ , because the domain consists of the integers 1, 2, 3, and 4. Because  $P(4)$ , which is the statement " $4^2 < 10$ ," is false, it follows that  $\forall x P(x)$  is false.

**Example:** Express the statement "Every student in this class has studied calculus" using predicates and quantifiers.

**Solution:** First, we rewrite the statement so that we can clearly identify the appropriate quantifiers to use.

"For every student in this class, that student has studied calculus."

Next, we introduce a variable  $x$  so that our statement becomes

"For every student  $x$  in this class,  $x$  has studied calculus."

Again, we introduce  $C(x)$ , which is the statement " $x$  has studied calculus." Consequently, if the domain for  $x$  consists of the students in the class, we can translate our statement as  $\forall x C(x)$ .

However, there are other correct approaches; different domains of discourse and other predicates can be used. The approach we select depends on the subsequent reasoning we want to carry out.

**Note:** Generally, an implicit assumption is made that all domains of discourse for quantifiers are nonempty. Note that if the domain is empty, then  $\forall x P(x)$  is true for any propositional function  $P(x)$ , because there are no elements  $x$  in the domain for which  $P(x)$  is false. Besides "for all" and "for every," universal quantification can be expressed in many other ways, including "all of," "for each," "given any," "for arbitrary," "for each," and "for any." It is best to avoid using "for any  $x$ "

because it is often ambiguous as to whether “any” means “every” or “some.” In some cases, “any” is unambiguous, such as when it is used in negatives: “There is not any reason to avoid studying.” A statement  $\forall x P(x)$  is false, where  $P(x)$  is a propositional function, if and only if  $P(x)$  is not always true when  $x$  is in the domain. One way to show that  $P(x)$  is not always true when  $x$  is in the domain is to find a counterexample to the statement  $\forall x P(x)$ . Note that a single counterexample is all we need to establish that  $\forall x P(x)$  is false. Looking for counterexamples to universally quantified statements is an important activity in the study of mathematics.

**The Existential Quantifier:** Many mathematical statements assert that there is an element with a certain property. Such statements are expressed using existential quantification. With existential quantification, we form a proposition that is true if and only if  $P(x)$  is true for at least one value of  $x$  in the domain.

The **existential quantification** of  $P(x)$  is the proposition

“There exists an element  $x$  in the domain such that  $P(x)$  .”

We use the notation  $\exists x P(x)$  for the existential quantification of  $P(x)$ . Here  $\exists$  is called the **existential quantifier**.

**Note:** A domain must always be specified when a statement  $\exists x P(x)$  is used. Furthermore, the meaning of  $\exists x P(x)$  changes when the domain changes. Without specifying the domain, the statement  $\exists x P(x)$  has no meaning. Besides the phrase “there exists,” we can also express existential quantification in many other ways, such as by using the words “for some,” “for at least one,” or “there is.” The existential quantification  $\exists x P(x)$  is read as “There is an  $x$  such that  $P(x)$  ,” “There is at least one  $x$  such that  $P(x)$  ,” “For some  $x P(x)$  .” Observe that the statement  $\exists x P(x)$  is false if and only if there is no element  $x$  in the domain for which  $P(x)$  is true. That is,  $\exists x P(x)$  is false if and only if  $P(x)$  is false for every element of the domain. Generally, an implicit assumption is made that all domains of discourse for quantifiers are nonempty. If the domain is empty, then  $\exists x P(x)$  is false whenever  $P(x)$  is a propositional function because when the domain is empty, there can be no element  $x$  in the domain for which  $P(x)$  is true.

**Example:** Let  $P(x)$  denote the statement “ $x > 3$ .” What is the truth value of the quantification  $\exists x P(x)$ , where the domain consists of all real numbers?

**Solution:** Because “ $x > 3$ ” is sometimes true—for instance, when  $x = 4$ —the existential quantification of  $P(x)$ , which is  $\exists x P(x)$ , is true.

**Example:** Let  $Q(x)$  denote the statement “ $x = x + 1$ .” What is the truth value of the quantification  $\exists x Q(x)$ , where the domain consists of all real numbers?

**Solution:** Because  $Q(x)$  is false for every real number  $x$ , the existential quantification of  $Q(x)$ , which is  $\exists x Q(x)$ , is false.

**Example:** Express the statements “Some student in this class has visited Mexico”, using predicates and quantifiers.

**Solution:** The statement “Some student in this class has visited Mexico” means that “There is a student in this class with the property that the student has visited Mexico.”

We can introduce a variable  $x$ , so that our statement becomes

“There is a student  $x$  in this class having the property that  $x$  has visited Mexico.”

We introduce  $M(x)$ , which is the statement “ $x$  has visited Mexico.” If the domain for  $x$  consists of the students in this class, we can translate this first statement as  $\exists x M(x)$ .

Quantifiers.		
Statement	When True?	When False?
$\forall x P(x)$	$P(x)$ is true for every $x$ .	There is an $x$ for which $P(x)$ is false.
$\exists x P(x)$	There is an $x$ for which $P(x)$ is true.	$P(x)$ is false for every $x$ .

### Quantifiers Over Finite Domains

When the domain of a quantifier is finite, that is, when all its elements can be listed, quantified statements can be expressed using propositional logic. In particular, when the elements of the domain are  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ , where  $n$  is a positive integer, the universal quantification  $\forall x P(x)$  is the same as the conjunction

$$P(x_1) \wedge P(x_2) \wedge \dots \wedge P(x_n),$$

because this conjunction is true if and only if  $P(x_1), P(x_2), \dots, P(x_n)$  are all true. Similarly, the existential quantification  $\exists x P(x)$  is the same as the disjunction

$$P(x_1) \vee P(x_2) \vee \dots \vee P(x_n).$$

**Quantifiers with Restricted Domains:** Consider the statement “For every natural number  $x$ ,  $x^2 < 100$ .” In this case the domain of discourse is the set of all-natural numbers  $\{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ . The given statement is  $\forall x P(x)$ , where  $P(x)$  is the statement “ $x^2 < 100$ ” and it is false as  $P(11)$  is false. But



if we consider our domain of discourse to be the set  $A = \{1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10\}$ , then  $x^2 < 100$  is true. So, if we change the domain of a quantifier the truth value of proposition may be changed. Let  $Q(x)$  be the proposition “ $x$  is in  $A$ .” Then the proposition “For every  $x$  in  $A$ ,  $x^2 < 100$ ” is written as  $\forall x (Q(x) \rightarrow P(x))$ , where the domain of discourse may be the set of all-natural numbers or real number. Note that the proposition “For every  $x$  in  $A$ ,  $x^2 < 100$ ” is equivalent to “For all  $x$ , if it is in  $A$ , then  $x^2 < 100$ .” An abbreviated notation is often used to restrict the domain of a quantifier. In this notation, a condition satisfied by the variable must be included after the quantifier. So, the other way of writing the statement  $\forall x (Q(x) \rightarrow P(x))$  is  $\forall x \in A P(x)$ .

The restricted domain statement  $\exists x \in A P(x)$  reads, "There exists some  $x$  in  $A$ , where the predicate  $P(x)$  holds". This is equivalent to saying, "There exists some  $x$ , that is in  $A$  and the predicate  $P(x)$  holds." Which is  $\exists x (x \in A \wedge P(x))$ .

**Example:** What do the statements  $\forall x < 0 (x^2 > 0)$ ,  $\forall y \neq 0 (y^3 \neq 0)$ , and  $\exists z > 0 (z^2 = 2)$  mean, where the domain in each case consists of the real numbers?

**Solution:** The statement  $\forall x < 0 (x^2 > 0)$ , states that for every real number  $x$  with  $x < 0$ ,  $x^2 > 0$ . That is, it states “The square of a negative real number is positive.” This statement is the same as  $\forall x (x < 0 \rightarrow x^2 > 0)$ . The statement  $\forall y \neq 0 (y^3 \neq 0)$ , states that for every real number  $y$  with  $y \neq 0$ , we have  $y^3 \neq 0$ . That is, it states “The cube of every nonzero real number is nonzero.” Note that this statement is equivalent to  $\forall y (y \neq 0 \rightarrow y^3 \neq 0)$ . Finally, the statement  $\exists z > 0 (z^2 = 2)$  states that there exists a real number  $z$  with  $z > 0$  such that  $z^2 = 2$ . That is, it states “There is a positive square root of 2.” This statement is equivalent to  $\exists z (z > 0 \wedge z^2 = 2)$ .

**Note:** The restriction of a universal quantification is the same as the universal quantification of a conditional statement. The quantifiers  $\forall$  and  $\exists$  have higher precedence than all logical operators from propositional calculus. For example,  $\forall x P(x) \vee Q(x)$  is the disjunction of  $\forall x P(x)$  and  $Q(x)$ . In other words, it means  $(\forall x P(x)) \vee Q(x)$  rather than  $\forall x (P(x) \vee Q(x))$ .

### Precedence of Quantifiers

The quantifiers  $\forall$  and  $\exists$  have higher precedence than all logical operators from propositional calculus. For example,  $\forall x P(x) \vee Q(x)$  is the disjunction of  $\forall x P(x)$  and  $Q(x)$ . In other words, it means  $(\forall x P(x)) \vee Q(x)$  rather than  $\forall x (P(x) \vee Q(x))$ .

**Logical Equivalences Involving Quantifiers:** Statements involving predicates and quantifiers are *logically equivalent* if and only if they have the same truth value no matter which predicates are substituted into these statements and which domain of discourse is used for the variables in these propositional functions.

**Example:** Show that  $\forall x (P(x) \wedge Q(x))$  and  $\forall x P(x) \wedge \forall x Q(x)$  are logically equivalent.

**Solution:** To show that these statements are logically equivalent, we must show that they always take the same truth value, no matter what the predicates  $P$  and  $Q$  are, and no matter which domain of discourse is used. Suppose we have particular predicates  $P$  and  $Q$ , with a common domain. We can show that  $\forall x (P(x) \wedge Q(x))$  and  $\forall x P(x) \wedge \forall x Q(x)$  are logically equivalent by doing two things. First, we show that if  $\forall x (P(x) \wedge Q(x))$  is true, then  $\forall x P(x) \wedge \forall x Q(x)$  is true. Second, we show that if  $\forall x P(x) \wedge \forall x Q(x)$  is true, then  $\forall x (P(x) \wedge Q(x))$  is true. So, suppose that  $\forall x (P(x) \wedge Q(x))$  is true. This means that if  $a$  is in the domain, then  $P(a) \wedge Q(a)$  is true. Hence,  $P(a)$  is true and  $Q(a)$  is true. Because  $P(a)$  is true and  $Q(a)$  is true for every element in the domain, we can conclude that  $\forall x P(x)$  and  $\forall x Q(x)$  are both true. This means that  $\forall x P(x) \wedge \forall x Q(x)$  is true. Next, suppose that  $\forall x P(x) \wedge \forall x Q(x)$  is true. It follows that  $\forall x P(x)$  is true and  $\forall x Q(x)$  is true. Hence, if  $a$  is in the domain, then  $P(a)$  is true and  $Q(a)$  is true [because  $P(x)$  and  $Q(x)$  are both true for all elements in the domain, there is no conflict using the same value of  $a$  here]. It follows that for all  $a$ ,  $P(a) \wedge Q(a)$  is true. It follows that  $\forall x (P(x) \wedge Q(x))$  is true. We can now conclude that  $\forall x (P(x) \wedge Q(x)) \equiv \forall x P(x) \wedge \forall x Q(x)$ .

**Note:** This logical equivalence shows that we can distribute a universal quantifier over a conjunction. Furthermore, we can also distribute an existential quantifier over a disjunction. However, we cannot distribute a universal quantifier over a disjunction, nor can we distribute an existential quantifier over a conjunction.

### Negating Quantified Expressions

We will often want to consider the negation of a quantified expression. For instance, consider the negation of the statement

“Every student in your class has taken a course in calculus.”

This statement is a universal quantification, namely,

$$\forall x P(x),$$

where  $P(x)$  is the statement “ $x$  has taken a course in calculus” and the domain consists of the students in your class. The negation of this statement is “It is not the case that every student in your class has taken a course in calculus.” This is equivalent to “There is a student in your class who has not taken a course in calculus.” And this is simply the existential quantification of the negation of the original propositional function, namely,

$$\exists x \neg P(x).$$

This example illustrates the following logical equivalence:  $\neg(\forall x P(x)) \equiv \exists x (\neg P(x))$ .

To show that  $\neg(\forall x P(x))$  and  $\exists x (\neg P(x))$  are logically equivalent no matter what the propositional function  $P(x)$  is and what the domain is, first note that  $\neg(\forall x P(x))$  is true if and only if  $\forall x P(x)$  is false. Next, note that  $\forall x P(x)$  is false if and only if there is an element  $x$  in the domain for which  $P(x)$  is false. This holds if and only if there is an element  $x$  in the domain for which  $\neg P(x)$  is true. Finally, note that there is an element  $x$  in the domain for which  $\neg P(x)$  is true if and only if  $\exists x (\neg P(x))$  is true. Putting these steps together, we can conclude that  $\neg(\forall x P(x))$  is true if and only if  $\exists x (\neg P(x))$  is true. It follows that  $\neg(\forall x P(x)) \equiv \exists x (\neg P(x))$ .

Similarly, we have the equivalence  $\neg\exists x Q(x) \equiv \forall x \neg Q(x)$ . To show that  $\neg\exists x Q(x)$  and  $\forall x \neg Q(x)$  are logically equivalent no matter what  $Q(x)$  is and what the domain is, first note that  $\neg\exists x Q(x)$  is true if and only if  $\exists x Q(x)$  is false. This is true if and only if no  $x$  exists in the domain for which  $Q(x)$  is true. Next, note that no  $x$  exists in the domain for which  $Q(x)$  is true if and only if  $Q(x)$  is false for every  $x$  in the domain. Finally, note that  $Q(x)$  is false for every  $x$  in the domain if and only if  $\neg Q(x)$  is true for all  $x$  in the domain, which holds if and only if  $\forall x \neg Q(x)$  is true. Putting these steps together, we see that  $\neg\exists x Q(x)$  is true if and only if  $\forall x \neg Q(x)$  is true. Thus, we conclude that  $\neg\exists x Q(x)$  and  $\forall x \neg Q(x)$  are logically equivalent.

The rules for negations for quantifiers are called **De Morgan’s laws for quantifiers**.

Negations	Equivalent statement	When is Negation true?	When is Negation false?
$\exists x Q(x)$	$\forall x \neg Q(x)$	For every $x$ , $Q(x)$ is false.	There is an $x$ for which $Q(x)$ is true

$\neg\forall x Q(x)$	$\exists x \neg Q(x)$	There is an $x$ for which $Q(x)$ is false	For every $x$ , $Q(x)$ is true.
----------------------	-----------------------	---	---------------------------------

**Example:** What are the negations of the statements “There is an honest politician” and “All Americans eat cheeseburgers”?

**Solution:** Let  $H(x)$  denote “ $x$  is honest.” Then the statement “There is an honest politician” is represented by  $\exists x H(x)$ , where the domain consists of all politicians. The negation of this statement is  $\neg\exists x H(x)$ , which is equivalent to  $\forall x \neg H(x)$ . This negation can be expressed as “Every politician is dishonest.”

Let  $C(x)$  denote “ $x$  eats cheeseburgers.” Then the statement “All Americans eat cheeseburgers” is represented by  $\forall x C(x)$ , where the domain consists of all Americans. The negation of this statement is  $\neg\forall x C(x)$ , which is equivalent to  $\exists x \neg C(x)$ . This negation can be expressed in several different ways, including “Some American does not eat cheeseburgers” and “There is an American who does not eat cheeseburgers.”

**Note:** In English, the statement “All politicians are not honest” is ambiguous. In common usage, this statement often means “Not all politicians are honest.” Consequently, we do not use this statement to express this negation.

**Using Quantifiers in System Specifications:** Previously, we used propositions to represent system specifications. However, many system specifications involve predicates and quantifications.

**Example:** Use predicates and quantifiers to express the system specifications

“All lions are fierce.”

“Some lions do not drink coffee.”

“Some fierce creatures do not drink coffee.”

**Solution:** Let  $P(x)$ ,  $Q(x)$ , and  $R(x)$  be the statements “ $x$  is a lion,” “ $x$  is fierce,” and “ $x$  drinks coffee,” respectively. We assume that the domain consists of all creatures. We can express these statements as:

$$\forall x (P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)).$$

$$\exists x (P(x) \wedge \neg R(x)).$$

$$\exists x (Q(x) \wedge \neg R(x)).$$

Notice that the second statement cannot be written as  $\exists x (P(x) \rightarrow \neg R(x))$ . The reason is that  $P(x) \rightarrow \neg R(x)$  is true whenever  $x$  is not a lion, so that  $\exists x (P(x) \rightarrow \neg R(x))$  is true as long as there is at least one creature that is not a lion, even if every lion drinks coffee. Similarly, the third statement cannot be written as  $\exists x (Q(x) \rightarrow \neg R(x))$ .

## Exercises—1.4

### Rules of Inference for Propositional Logic

Proofs in mathematics are valid arguments that establish the truth of mathematical statements. By an **argument**, we mean a sequence of statements that end with a conclusion. By **valid argument**, we mean that the conclusion, or final statement of the argument, must follow from the truth of the preceding statements of the argument. To deduce new statements from statements we already have, we use some rules which are templates for constructing valid arguments. These rules are our basic tools for establishing the truth of statements and we call them rules of inference for propositional logic

**Argument:** An **argument** in propositional logic is a sequence of propositions. All but the final proposition in the argument are called **premises** and the final proposition is called the **conclusion**. An argument is **valid** if all its premises are true implies that the conclusion is true. An **argument form** in propositional logic is a sequence of compound propositions involving propositional variables. An argument form is **valid** no matter which particular propositions are substituted for the propositional variables in its premises; the conclusion is true if the premises are all true.

**To check the validity of an argument:** Consider the argument with Premises  $p$ ,  $q$  and conclusion  $r$ . For a valid argument all premises are true implies that the conclusion is true. i.e.  $p \wedge q$  is true implies  $r$  is true. i.e.  $p \wedge q$  is true and  $r$  is true. Moreover, the argument is invalid only when  $p \wedge q$  is true and  $r$  is false. So, argument is valid even if  $p \wedge q$  is false and  $r$  is true or false. Thus, argument is valid if  $(p \wedge q) \rightarrow r$  is true irrespective of the truth values of  $p, q, r$ , i.e.  $(p \wedge q) \rightarrow r$  is a tautology.

**Example:** Consider the following argument involving propositions:

“If you have a current password, then you can log onto the network.”

“You have a current password.”

Therefore, “You can log onto the network.”

We would like to determine whether this is a valid argument. That is, we would like to determine whether the conclusion “You can log onto the network” must be true when the premises “If you have a current password, then you can log onto the network” and “You have a current password” are both true. Before we discuss the validity of this particular argument, we will look at its form. Use  $p$  to represent “You have a current password” and  $q$  to represent “You can log onto the network.” Then, the argument has the form

$$p \rightarrow q$$

$$\underline{p}$$

$$\therefore q;$$

where  $\therefore$  is the symbol that denotes “therefore.”

This can be written as  $((p \rightarrow q) \wedge p) \rightarrow q$  and we have to show it is a tautology. This can be done by truth table as below:

$p$	$q$	$p \rightarrow q$	$(p \rightarrow q) \wedge p$	$((p \rightarrow q) \wedge p) \rightarrow q$
$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$	$T$
$T$	$F$	$F$	$F$	$T$
$F$	$T$	$T$	$F$	$T$
$F$	$F$	$T$	$F$	$T$

In particular, when both  $p \rightarrow q$  and  $p$  are true, we know that  $q$  must also be true. We say this form of argument is **valid** because whenever all its premises are true, the conclusion must also be true. Now suppose that both “If you have a current password, then you can log onto the network” and “You have a current password” are true statements. When we replace  $p$  by “You have a current password” and  $q$  by “You can log onto the network,” it necessarily follows that the conclusion “You can log onto the network” is true. This argument is valid because its form is valid. Note that whenever we replace  $p$  and  $q$  by propositions where  $p \rightarrow q$  and  $p$  are both true, then  $q$  must also be true.

**Note:** What happens when we replace  $p$  and  $q$  in this argument form by propositions where not both  $p$  and  $p \rightarrow q$  are true? For example, suppose that  $p$  represents “You have access to the network” and  $q$  represents “You can change your grade” and that  $p$  is true, but  $p \rightarrow q$  is false. The argument we obtain by substituting these values of  $p$  and  $q$  into the argument form is

“If you have access to the network, then you can change your grade.”

“You have access to the network.”

∴ “You can change your grade.”

The argument we obtained is a valid argument, because one of the premises, namely the first premise, is false, we cannot conclude that the conclusion is true.

**Note:** We can always use a truth table to show that an argument form is valid. We do this by showing that whenever the premises are true, the conclusion must also be true. However, this can be a tedious approach. For example, when an argument form involves 10 different propositional variables, to use a truth table to show this argument form is valid, requires  $2^{10} = 1024$  different rows. Fortunately, we do not have to resort to truth tables. Instead, we can first establish the validity of some relatively simple argument forms, called **rules of inference**. These rules of inference can be used as building blocks to construct more complicated valid argument forms.

**Example:** The tautology  $(p \wedge (p \rightarrow q)) \rightarrow q$  is the basis of the rule of inference called **modus ponens**, or the **law of detachment**. This tautology leads to the following valid argument form,

$$\begin{array}{l} p \\ p \rightarrow q \\ \hline \therefore q \end{array}$$

**Example:** Suppose that the conditional statement “If it snows today, then we will go skiing” and its hypothesis, “It is snowing today,” are true. Then, by modus ponens, it follows that the conclusion of the conditional statement, “We will go skiing,” is true.

There are many useful rules of inference for propositional logic.

No.	Rule of Inference	Tautology	Name
1	$\begin{array}{l} p \\ p \rightarrow q \\ \hline \therefore q \end{array}$	$(p \wedge (p \rightarrow q)) \rightarrow q$	Modus ponens
2	$\begin{array}{l} \neg q \\ p \rightarrow q \\ \hline \therefore \neg p \end{array}$	$(\neg q \wedge (p \rightarrow q)) \rightarrow \neg p$	Modus tollens
3	$\begin{array}{l} p \rightarrow q \\ q \rightarrow r \\ \hline \therefore p \rightarrow r \end{array}$	$((p \rightarrow q) \wedge (q \rightarrow r)) \rightarrow (p \rightarrow r)$	Hypothetical syllogism
4	$\begin{array}{l} p \vee q \\ \neg p \\ \hline \therefore q \end{array}$	$((p \vee q) \wedge \neg p) \rightarrow q$	Disjunctive syllogism

5	$\frac{p \vee q}{\neg p \vee r}$ $\therefore q \vee r$	$((p \vee q) \wedge (\neg p \vee r)) \rightarrow (q \vee r)$	Resolution
6	$\frac{p}{\therefore p \vee q}$	$p \rightarrow (p \vee q)$	Addition
7	$\frac{p \wedge q}{\therefore p}$	$(p \wedge q) \rightarrow p$	Simplification
8	$\frac{p}{q}$ $\therefore p \wedge q$	$((p) \wedge (q)) \rightarrow (p \wedge q)$	Conjunction

**Example:** State which rule of inference is the basis of the following argument?

“It is below freezing now. Therefore, it is either below freezing or raining now.”

**Solution:** Addition.

**Example:** State which rule of inference is the basis of the following argument?

“It is below freezing and raining now. Therefore, it is below freezing now.”

**Solution:** Simplification.

**Example:** State which rule of inference is used in the argument:

“If it rains today, then we will not have a barbecue today. If we do not have a barbecue today, then we will have a barbecue tomorrow. Therefore, if it rains today, then we will have a barbecue tomorrow.”

**Solution:** Hypothetical syllogism.

**Example:** Show that the premises

“It is not sunny this afternoon and it is colder than yesterday,”

“We will go swimming only if it is sunny,”

“If we do not go swimming, then we will take a canoe trip,” and

“If we take a canoe trip, then we will be home by sunset”

lead to the conclusion

“We will be home by sunset.”

**Solution:** Let  $p$  be the proposition “It is sunny this afternoon,”  $q$  the proposition “It is colder than yesterday,”  $r$  the proposition “We will go swimming,”  $s$  the proposition “We will take a canoe trip,” and  $t$  the proposition “We will be home by sunset.” Then the premises become  $\neg p \wedge q, r \rightarrow p, \neg r \rightarrow s$ , and  $s \rightarrow t$ . The conclusion is simply  $t$ . We need to show, it is a valid



argument with premises (i)  $\neg p \wedge q$ , (ii)  $r \rightarrow p$ , (iii)  $\neg r \rightarrow s$ , and (iv)  $s \rightarrow t$  and conclusion  $t$ . We construct an argument to show that our premises lead to the desired conclusion as follows.

**Step 1**

$\neg p \wedge q$	Premise (i)
<hr/>	
$\therefore \neg p$	simplification

**Step 3**

$\neg r \rightarrow s$	Premise (iii)
$\neg r$	step 2
<hr/>	
$\therefore s$	Modus ponens

**Step 2**

$r \rightarrow p$	Premise (ii)
$\neg p$	Step 1
<hr/>	
$\therefore \neg r$	Modus tollens

**Step 4**

$s \rightarrow t$	Premise (iv)
$s$	step 3
<hr/>	
$\therefore t$	Modus ponens

Therefore, the argument is valid.

**Note:** we could have used a truth table to show that whenever each of the four hypotheses is true, the conclusion is also true. However, because we are working with five propositional variables,  $p, q, r, s$ , and  $t$ , such a truth table would have 32 rows.

**Example:** Show that the premises “If you send me an e-mail message, then I will finish writing the program,” “If you do not send me an e-mail message, then I will go to sleep early,” and “If I go to sleep early, then I will wake up feeling refreshed” lead to the conclusion “If I do not finish writing the program, then I will wake up feeling refreshed.”

**Solution:** Let  $p$  be the proposition “You send me an e-mail message,”  $q$  the proposition “I will finish writing the program,”  $r$  the proposition “I will go to sleep early,” and  $s$  the proposition “I will wake up feeling refreshed.” Then the premises are (i)  $p \rightarrow q$ , (ii)  $\neg p \rightarrow r$ , and (iii)  $r \rightarrow s$ . The desired conclusion is  $\neg q \rightarrow s$ . We need to give a valid argument with premises  $p \rightarrow q$ ,  $\neg p \rightarrow r$ , and  $r \rightarrow s$  and conclusion  $\neg q \rightarrow s$ . This argument form shows that the premises lead to the desired conclusion.

**Step 1**

$p \rightarrow q$	Premise (i)
<hr/>	
$\therefore \neg q \rightarrow \neg p$	Contrapositive

**Step 2**

$\neg q \rightarrow \neg p$	step 1
$\neg p \rightarrow r$	premise (ii)
<hr/>	
$\therefore \neg q \rightarrow r$	Hypothetical syllogism

**Step 3**

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 \neg q \rightarrow r & \text{step 2} \\
 r \rightarrow s & \text{premise (iii)} \\
 \hline
 \therefore \neg q \rightarrow s & \text{Hypothetical syllogism}
 \end{array}$$

This argument form shows that the premises lead to the desired conclusion.

**Note:** Computer programs have been developed to automate the task of reasoning and proving theorems. Many of these programs make use of a rule of inference known as **resolution**. This rule of inference is based on the tautology  $((p \vee q) \wedge (\neg p \vee r)) \rightarrow (q \vee r)$ . The final disjunction in the resolution rule,  $q \vee r$ , is called the **resolvent**. When we let  $r = q$  in this tautology, we obtain  $(p \vee q) \wedge (\neg p \vee q) \rightarrow q$ . Furthermore, when we let  $r = \mathbf{F}$ , we obtain  $(p \vee q) \wedge (\neg p) \rightarrow q$  (because  $q \vee \mathbf{F} \equiv q$ ), which is the tautology on which the rule of disjunctive syllogism is based.

**Example:** Use resolution to show that the hypotheses “Jasmine is skiing or it is not snowing” and “It is snowing or Bart is playing hockey” imply that “Jasmine is skiing or Bart is playing hockey.”

**Fallacies:** Several common fallacies (mistaken beliefs) arise in incorrect arguments. These fallacies resemble rules of inference, but are based on contingencies rather than tautologies.

- (i) The proposition  $((p \rightarrow q) \wedge q) \rightarrow p$  is not a tautology, because it is false when  $p$  is false and  $q$  is true. However, there are many incorrect arguments that treat this as a tautology. In other words, they treat the argument with premises  $p \rightarrow q$  and  $q$  and conclusion  $p$  as a valid argument form, which it is not. This type of incorrect reasoning is called the **fallacy of affirming the conclusion**.
- (ii) The proposition  $((p \rightarrow q) \wedge \neg p) \rightarrow \neg q$  is not a tautology, because it is false when  $p$  is false and  $q$  is true. Many incorrect arguments use this incorrectly as a rule of inference. This type of incorrect reasoning is called the **fallacy of denying the hypothesis**.

**Example:** Is the following argument valid?

“If you do every problem in this book, then you will learn discrete mathematics.”

“You learned discrete mathematics.”

“Therefore, you did every problem in this book.”

**Solution:** Let  $p$  be the proposition “You did every problem in this book.” Let  $q$  be the proposition “You learned discrete mathematics.” Then this argument is of the form: if  $p \rightarrow q$  and  $q$ , then  $p$ . This is not a valid argument and is an example of an incorrect argument using the fallacy of affirming the conclusion. Indeed, it is possible for you to learn discrete mathematics in some way other than by doing every problem in this book. (You may learn discrete mathematics by reading, listening to lectures, doing some, but not all, the problems in this book, and so on.) This is the case of **fallacy of affirming the conclusion**.

**Example:** Is the following argument valid?

“If you do every problem in this book, then you will learn discrete mathematics.”

“You did not do every problem in this book.”

“Therefore, you did not learn discrete mathematics.”

**Solution:** This is not a valid argument. It is possible that you learned discrete mathematics even if you did not do every problem in this book. This is the case of **fallacy of denying the hypothesis**.

**Rules of Inference for Quantified Statements:** We have discussed rules of inference for propositions. We will now describe some important rules of inference for statements involving quantifiers. These rules of inference are used extensively in mathematical arguments, often without being explicitly mentioned.

**Universal instantiation** is the rule of inference used to conclude that  $P(c)$  is true, where  $c$  is a particular member of the domain, given the premise  $\forall x P(x)$ . Universal instantiation is used when we conclude from the statement “All women are wise” that “Lisa is wise,” where Lisa is a member of the domain of all women.

**Universal generalization** is the rule of inference that states that  $\forall x P(x)$  is true, given the premise that  $P(c)$  is true for all elements  $c$  in the domain. Universal generalization is used when we show that  $\forall x P(x)$  is true by taking an arbitrary element  $c$  from the domain and showing that  $P(c)$  is true. The element  $c$  that we select must be an arbitrary, and not a specific, element of the domain. That is, when we assert from  $\forall x P(x)$  the existence of an element  $c$  in the domain, we have no control over  $c$  and cannot make any other assumptions about  $c$  other than it comes from the domain. Universal generalization is used implicitly in many proofs in mathematics and is

seldom mentioned explicitly. However, the error of adding unwarranted assumptions about the arbitrary element  $c$  when universal generalization is used is all too common in incorrect reasoning.

**Existential instantiation** is the rule that allows us to conclude that there is an element  $c$  in the domain for which  $P(c)$  is true if we know that  $\exists x P(x)$  is true. We cannot select an arbitrary value of  $c$  here, but rather it must be a  $c$  for which  $P(c)$  is true. Usually we have no knowledge of what  $c$  is, only that it exists. Because it exists, we may give it a name ' $c$ ' and continue our argument.

**Existential generalization** is the rule of inference that is used to conclude that  $\exists x P(x)$  is true when a particular element  $c$  with  $P(c)$  true is known. That is, if we know one element  $c$  in the domain for which  $P(c)$  is true, then we know that  $\exists x P(x)$  is true.

<b>Rules of Inference for Quantified Statements.</b>	
<b>Rule of Inference</b>	<b>Name</b>
$\forall x P(x)$ $\therefore P(c)$	Universal instantiation
$P(c)$ for an arbitrary $c$ $\therefore \forall x P(x)$	Universal generalization
$\exists x P(x)$ $\therefore P(c)$ for some element $c$	Existential instantiation
$P(c)$ for some element $c$ $\therefore \exists x P(x)$	Existential generalization

**Example:** Show that the premises “Everyone in this discrete mathematics class has taken a course in computer science” and “Maria is a student in this class” imply the conclusion “Maria has taken a course in computer science.”

**Solution:** Let  $D(x)$  denote “ $x$  is in this discrete mathematics class,” and let  $C(x)$  denote “ $x$  has taken a course in computer science.” Then the premises are (i)  $\forall x (D(x) \rightarrow C(x))$  and (ii)

$D(\text{Maria})$ . The conclusion is  $C(\text{Maria})$ . The following steps can be used to establish the conclusion from the premises.

Step 1	Reason
$\forall x(D(x) \rightarrow C(x))$	Premise (i)
<hr/>	
$\therefore D(\text{Maria}) \rightarrow C(\text{Maria})$	Universal instantiation

Step 2	Reason
$D(\text{Maria}) \rightarrow C(\text{Maria})$	step 1
$D(\text{Maria})$	Premise (ii)
<hr/>	
$\therefore C(\text{Maria})$	Modus ponens

**Example:** Show that the premises “A student in this class has not read the book,” and “Everyone in this class passed the first exam” imply the conclusion “Someone who passed the first exam has not read the book.”

**Solution:** Let  $C(x)$  be “ $x$  is in this class,”  $B(x)$  be “ $x$  has read the book,” and  $P(x)$  be “ $x$  passed the first exam.” The premises are (i)  $\exists x (C(x) \wedge \neg B(x))$  and (ii)  $\forall x (C(x) \rightarrow P(x))$ . The conclusion is  $\exists x (P(x) \wedge \neg B(x))$ . These steps can be used to establish the conclusion from the premises.

Step 1	Reason
$\exists x(C(x) \wedge \neg B(x))$	Premise (i)
<hr/>	
$C(a) \wedge \neg B(a)$	Existential instantiation

Step 2	Reason
$C(a) \wedge \neg B(a)$	step 1
<hr/>	
$C(a)$	Simplification

Step 3	Reason
$C(a) \wedge \neg B(a)$	step 1
<hr/>	
$\neg B(a)$	Simplification

Step 4	Reason
--------	--------

$$\forall x(C(x) \rightarrow P(x))$$

Premise (ii)

---

$$C(a) \rightarrow P(a)$$

Universal instantiation

**Step 5****Reason**

$$C(a) \rightarrow P(a)$$

step 4

$$C(a)$$

step 2

---

$$P(a)$$

Modus ponens from (3) and (5)

**Step 6****Reason**

$$P(a)$$

step 5

$$\neg B(a)$$

step 3

---

$$P(a) \wedge \neg B(a)$$

Conjunction

**Step 7****Reason**

$$P(a) \wedge \neg B(a)$$

step 6

---

$$\exists x(P(x) \wedge \neg B(x))$$

Existential generalization

**Combining Rules of Inference for Propositions and Quantified Statements:** We have developed rules of inference both for propositions and for quantified statements. Sometimes we use both a rule of inference for quantified statements, and a rule of inference for propositional logic.

Here we give some of them

- (i) **Universal modus ponens** rule tells us that if  $\forall x (P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$  is true, and if  $P(a)$  is true for a particular element  $a$  in the domain of the universal quantifier, then  $Q(a)$  must also be true. i.e.

$$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$$

$P(a)$ , where  $a$  is a particular element in the domain

---


$$\therefore Q(a)$$

- (ii) **Universal modus tollens** combines universal instantiation and modus tollens and can be expressed in the following way:

$$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$$

$\neg Q(a)$ , where  $a$  is a particular element in the domain

---

$\therefore \neg P(a)$

## Exercises—1.6

### Mathematical Induction

Now we introduce a notion of proof and describe methods for constructing proofs. A proof is a valid argument that establishes the truth of a mathematical statement. A proof can use the hypotheses of the theorem, if any, axioms assumed to be true and previously proven theorems. Using these ingredients and rules of inference, the final step of the proof establishes the truth of the statement being proved. There are two types of proofs, formal proofs and informal proofs. The proof that an argument is true is **formal proof**, where all steps were supplied, and the rules for each step in the argument were given. However, formal proofs of useful theorems can be extremely long and hard to follow. In practice, the proofs of theorems designed for human consumption are almost always **informal proofs**, where more than one rule of inference may be used in each step, where steps may be skipped, where the axioms being assumed and the rules of inference used are not explicitly stated. Informal proofs can often explain to humans why theorems are true, while computers are perfectly happy producing formal proofs using automated reasoning systems. When you read proofs, you will often find the words “obviously” or “clearly.” These words indicate that steps have been omitted, however we will try to avoid using these words and try not to omit too many steps. There are many proof techniques that can be used to prove a wide variety of theorems. For example: direct proof, proof by contraposition, vacuous and trivial proofs, proofs by contradiction, proofs of equivalence, counterexamples, mathematical induction. A major goal of this section is to provide a thorough understanding of mathematical induction. In this section, we will describe how mathematical induction can be used and why it is a valid proof technique. It is extremely important to note that mathematical induction can be used only to prove results obtained in some other way. It is not a tool for discovering formulae or theorems.

Many mathematical statements assert that a property is true for all positive integers  $n$  with  $n \geq b$ . Mathematical induction can be used to prove this type of statements  $P(n)$ ,  $n \geq b$ . Mathematical induction can be used to prove a tremendous variety of results. Understanding how to read and construct proofs by mathematical induction is a key goal of learning discrete mathematics.

Mathematical induction is based on the rule of inference that tells us that if  $P(b)$  and  $\forall k > b (P(k) \rightarrow P(k + 1))$  are true for the domain of positive integers, then  $\forall n \geq b P(n)$  is true. i.e.

$$\frac{\forall k > b (P(k) \rightarrow P(k + 1))}{P(b)} \\ \therefore \forall n \geq b P(n)$$

Proofs using mathematical induction have two parts. First, **basis step**, we show that the statement holds for the positive integer  $b$ . Second, **inductive step**, we show that if the statement holds for a positive integer  $> b$  then it must also hold for the next larger integer. To complete the inductive step of a proof using the principle of mathematical induction, we assume that  $P(k)$  is true for an arbitrary positive integer  $k$  and show that under this assumption,  $P(k + 1)$  must also be true. The assumption that  $P(k)$  is true is called the **inductive hypothesis**. Once we complete both steps in a proof by mathematical induction, we conclude that  $P(n)$  is true for all positive integers  $> b$ , that is, we have shown that  $\forall n \geq b P(n)$  is true.

**Example:** Show that if  $n$  is a positive integer, then

$$1 + 2 + \dots + n = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}.$$

**Solution:** Let  $P(n)$  be the proposition that the sum of the first  $n$  positive integers, is  $\frac{n(n + 1)}{2}$ . We must do two things to prove that  $P(n)$  is true for  $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ . Namely, we must show that  $P(1)$  is true and that the conditional statement  $P(k)$  implies  $P(k + 1)$  is true for  $k > 1$ .

**Basis step:**  $P(1)$  is true, because  $1 = \frac{1(1 + 1)}{2}$ .

(The left-hand side of this equation is 1 because 1 is the sum of the first positive integer. The right-hand side is found by substituting 1 for  $n$  in  $\frac{n(n + 1)}{2}$ .)

**Inductive step:** For the inductive hypothesis we assume that  $P(k)$  holds for an arbitrary positive integer  $k$ . That is, we assume that



$$1 + 2 + \cdots + k = \frac{k(k + 1)}{2}.$$

Under this assumption, it must be shown that  $P(k + 1)$  is true, namely, that

$$1 + 2 + \cdots + k + (k + 1) = \frac{(k + 1)[(k + 1) + 1]}{2} = \frac{(k + 1)(k + 2)}{2}$$

is also true. When we add  $k + 1$  to both sides of the equation in  $P(k)$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 1 + 2 + \cdots + k + (k + 1) &= \frac{k(k + 1)}{2} + (k + 1) \\ &= \frac{k(k + 1) + 2(k + 1)}{2} \\ &= \frac{(k + 1)(k + 2)}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

This last equation shows that  $P(k + 1)$  is true under the assumption that  $P(k)$  is true. This completes the inductive step.

We have completed the basis step and the inductive step, so by mathematical induction we know that  $P(n)$  is true for all positive integers  $n$ . That is, we have proven that

$$1 + 2 + \cdots + n = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}$$

for all positive integers  $n$ .

**Example:** Conjecture a formula for the sum of the first  $n$  positive odd integers. Then prove your conjecture using mathematical induction.

**Example:** Use mathematical induction to show that  $1 + 2 + 2^2 + \cdots + 2^n = 2^{n+1} - 1$

**Example:** Use mathematical induction to prove that  $n^3 - n$  is divisible by 3 whenever  $n$  is a positive integer.

**Example:** Use mathematical induction to prove that  $7^{n+2} + 8^{2n+1}$  is divisible by 57 for every nonnegative integer  $n$ .

**Example:** If  $a_n = 2^n + 3^n$  show that  $a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}$ , for  $n \geq 2$  ( $a_0 = 1$  and  $a_1 = 5$ ).

**Example:** The **harmonic numbers**  $H_j, j = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ , are defined by

$$H_j = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} + \cdots + \frac{1}{j}.$$

Use mathematical induction to show that

$$H_{2^n} \geq 1 + \frac{n}{2}$$

whenever  $n$  is a nonnegative integer.

**Strong Induction:** There is another form of mathematical induction, called strong induction, which can often be used when we cannot easily prove a result using mathematical induction. The basis step of a proof by strong induction is the same as a proof of the same result using mathematical induction. That is, in a strong induction proof that  $P(n)$  is true for all positive integers  $n \geq b$ , the basis step shows that  $P(b)$  is true. However, the inductive steps in these two proof methods are different. In a proof by mathematical induction, the inductive step shows that if the inductive hypothesis  $P(k)$  is true, then  $P(k + 1)$  is also true. In a proof by strong induction, the inductive step shows that if  $P(j)$  is true for all positive integers  $j$  not exceeding  $k$ , then  $P(k + 1)$  is true. That is, for the inductive hypothesis we assume that  $P(j)$  is true for  $j = b, b + 1, \dots, k$ . Thus to prove that  $P(n)$  is true for all positive integers  $n \geq b$ , where  $P(n)$  is a propositional function, we complete two steps:

**Basis step:** We verify that the proposition  $P(b)$  is true.

**Inductive step:** We show that the conditional statement  $[P(b) \wedge P(b + 1) \wedge \dots \wedge P(k)] \rightarrow P(k + 1)$  is true for all positive integers  $k > b$ .

**Example:** Given that  $d_1 = 1, d_2 = 2, d_3 = 3, d_{n+3} = d_{n+2} + d_{n+1} + d_n$  for all positive integer  $n$ . Show by method of Strong Induction that  $d_n < 2^n$ .

**Solution:** Given  $d_1 = 1, d_2 = 2, d_3 = 3$ , and for all positive integer  $n$ ,

$$d_{n+3} = d_{n+2} + d_{n+1} + d_n.$$

To prove that,  $d_n < 2^n$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  by method of strong induction.

Step 1. To prove  $d_n < 2^n$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , let  $P(n): d_n < 2^n$ .

Step 2. (Basis Step) Given that  $d_1 = 1, d_2 = 2, d_3 = 3$ .

Also  $d_1 = 1 < 2^1, d_2 = 2 < 2^2, d_3 = 3 < 2^3$ .

Therefore  $P(1), P(2)$  and  $P(3)$  are true.

Step 3. (Inductive Step) Assume that  $P(4), P(5), \dots, P(k)$  are true for some  $k > 3$ . We have to show that the conditional statement  $[P(1) \wedge P(2) \wedge \dots \wedge P(k)] \rightarrow P(k + 1)$  is true. i.e  $P(k + 1)$  is true.

Now,  $P(k + 1)$ :  $d_{k+1} < 2^{k+1}$ . Thus, we have to show  $d_{k+1} < 2^{k+1}$ .

As  $P(k)$ ,  $P(k - 1)$  and  $P(k - 2)$  are true,

$$d_k < 2^k, d_{k-1} < 2^{k-1}, d_{k-2} < 2^{k-2}.$$

Given that

$$d_{n+3} = d_{n+2} + d_{n+1} + d_n.$$

So

$$d_{k+1} = d_k + d_{k-1} + d_{k-2} < 2^k + 2^{k-1} + 2^{k-2} = 2^k \left( 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} \right) < 2^k \times 2 = 2^{k+1}.$$

i.e.  $d_{k+1} < 2^{k+1}$ . i.e.  $P(k + 1)$  is true.

Thus, the conditional statement  $[P(1) \wedge P(2) \wedge \dots \wedge P(k)] \rightarrow P(k + 1)$  is true.

Step 4. (Conclusion) As we have already shown  $P(1)$ ,  $P(2)$  and  $P(3)$  are true, and the conditional statement  $[P(1) \wedge P(2) \wedge \dots \wedge P(k)] \rightarrow P(k + 1)$  is true, by method of strong induction  $P(n)$  is true for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . That is  $d_n < 2^n$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

**Example:** Given  $a_0=2, a_1 = 7$ , and for all  $n \geq 2, a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}$ . Prove that,  $a_n = 3^{n+1} - 2^n$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  by method of strong induction.

**Solution:** Given  $a_0=2, a_1 = 7$ , and for all  $n \geq 2$ ,

$$a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}.$$

To prove that,  $a_n = 3^{n+1} - 2^n$ , for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  by method of strong induction.

Step 1. To prove  $a_n = 3^{n+1} - 2^n$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , let  $P(n)$ :  $a_n = 3^{n+1} - 2^n$ .

Step 2. (Basis Step) Given that  $a_0=2, a_1 = 7$ . Also  $a_0 = 3^{0+1} - 2^0 = 2$  and  $a_1 = 3^{1+1} - 2^1 = 7$ .

Now for all  $n \geq 2$ ,  $a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}$ .

So,  $a_2 = 5a_1 - 6a_0 = 5 \times 7 - 6 \times 2 = 23$ . Also  $a_2 = 3^{2+1} - 2^2 = 23$ .

Therefore  $P(0)$ ,  $P(1)$  and  $P(2)$  are true.

Step 3. (Inductive Step) Assume that  $P(1), P(2), \dots, P(k)$  are true for some  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . We have to show that the conditional statement  $[P(1) \wedge P(2) \wedge \dots \wedge P(k)] \rightarrow P(k + 1)$  is true. i.e.  $P(k + 1)$  is true.

Now,  $P(k + 1)$ :  $a_{k+1} = 3^{k+1+1} - 2^{k+1} = 3^{k+2} - 2^{k+1}$ .

Thus, we have to show  $a_{k+1} = 3^{k+2} - 2^{k+1}$ .

Given that

$$a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}.$$

Therefore,  $a_{k+1} = 5a_k - 6a_{k-1}$ .

As  $P(k)$  and  $P(k-1)$  are true,  $a_k = 3^{k+1} - 2^k$  and  $a_{k-1} = 3^k - 2^{k-1}$ .

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} a_{k+1} &= 5a_k - 6a_{k-1} \\ &= 5(3^{k+1} - 2^k) - 6(3^k - 2^{k-1}) \\ &= 15 \times 3^k - 10 \times 2^{k-1} - 6 \times 3^k + 6 \times 2^{k-1} \\ &= (15 - 6)3^k - (10 - 6)2^{k-1} \\ &= 9 \times 3^k - 4 \times 2^{k-1} \\ &= 3^{k+2} - 2^{k+1} \end{aligned}$$

i.e.

$$a_{k+1} = 3^{k+2} - 2^{k+1}.$$

i.e.  $P(k+1)$  is true.

Thus, the conditional statement  $[P(1) \wedge P(2) \wedge \dots \wedge P(k)] \rightarrow P(k+1)$  is true.

Step 4. (Conclusion) As we have already shown  $P(0)$ ,  $P(1)$  and  $P(2)$  are true, and the conditional statement  $[P(1) \wedge P(2) \wedge \dots \wedge P(k)] \rightarrow P(k+1)$  is true, by method of strong induction  $P(n)$  is true for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . That is  $a_n = 3^{n+1} - 2^n$  for all  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ .

## Unit II---- Set, Relation and Function

**Set:** A set is an unordered collection of objects, called *elements* or *members* of the set. A set is said to *contain* its elements. We write  $a \in A$  to denote that  $a$  is an element of the set  $A$ . The notation  $a \notin A$  denotes that  $a$  is not an element of the set  $A$ .

It is common for sets to be denoted using uppercase letters. Lowercase letters are usually used to denote elements of sets. There are several ways to describe a set. One way is to list all the members of a set, when this is possible. We use a notation where all members of the set are listed between braces. For example, the notation  $\{a, b, c, d\}$  represents the set with the four elements  $a, b, c$ , and  $d$ . This way of describing a set is known as the **roster method**.

**Example:** The set  $V$  of all vowels in the English alphabet can be written as  $V = \{a, e, i, o, u\}$ .

**Example:** The set  $O$  of odd positive integers less than 10 can be expressed by  $O = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}$ .

Although sets are usually used to group together elements with common properties, there is nothing that prevents a set from having seemingly unrelated elements. For instance,  $\{a, 2, \text{Fred}, \text{New Jersey}\}$  is the set containing the four elements  $a, 2, \text{Fred}$ , and  $\text{New Jersey}$ .

Sometimes the roster method is used to describe a set without listing all its members. Some members of the set are listed, and then *ellipses* ( $\dots$ ) are used when the general pattern of the elements is obvious.

**Example:** The set of positive integers less than 100 can be denoted by  $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, 99\}$ .

Another way to describe a set is to use **set builder** notation. We characterize all those elements in the set by stating the property or properties they must have to be members. For instance, the set  $O$  of all odd positive integers less than 10 can be written as

$$O = \{x \mid x \text{ is an odd positive integer less than } 10\},$$

or, specifying the universe  $\mathbb{N}$  as the set of positive integers, as

$$O = \{x \in \mathbb{N} : x \text{ is odd and } x < 10\}.$$

**Equal sets:** Two sets are *equal* if and only if they have the same elements. Therefore, if  $A$  and  $B$  are sets, then  $A$  and  $B$  are equal if and only if  $\forall x(x \in A \leftrightarrow x \in B)$ . We write  $A = B$  if  $A$  and  $B$  are equal sets.

**Example:** The sets  $\{1, 3, 5\}$  and  $\{3, 5, 1\}$  are equal, because they have the same elements.

Note that the order in which the elements of a set are listed does not matter. Note also that it does not matter if an element of a set is listed more than once, so  $\{1, 3, 3, 3, 5, 5, 5, 5\}$  is the same as the set  $\{1, 3, 5\}$  because they have the same elements.

There is a special set that has no elements. This set is called the **empty set**, or **null set**, and is denoted by  $\emptyset$ . The empty set can also be denoted by  $\{\}$  (that is, we represent the empty set with

a pair of braces that encloses all the elements in this set). Often, a set of elements with certain properties turns out to be the null set. For instance, the set of all positive integers that are greater than their squares is the null set. A set with one element is called a **singleton set**.

A common error is to confuse the empty set  $\emptyset$  with the set  $\{\emptyset\}$ , which is a singleton set. The single element of the set  $\{\emptyset\}$  is the empty set itself!

It is common to encounter situations where the elements of one set are also the elements of a second set. We now introduce some terminology and notation to express such relationships between sets.

**Subset:** The set  $A$  is a *subset* of  $B$  if and only if every element of  $A$  is also an element of  $B$ . We use the notation  $A \subseteq B$  to indicate that  $A$  is a subset of the set  $B$ .

We see that  $A \subseteq B$  if and only if the quantification  $\forall x(x \in A \rightarrow x \in B)$  is true. Note that to show that  $A$  is not a subset of  $B$  we need only find one element  $x \in A$  with  $x \notin B$ . Such an  $x$  is a counterexample to the claim that  $x \in A$  implies  $x \in B$ .

**Example:** For every set  $S$ , (i)  $\emptyset \subseteq S$  and (ii)  $S \subseteq S$ .

**Solution:** To show that  $\emptyset \subseteq S$ , we must show that  $\forall x(x \in \emptyset \rightarrow x \in S)$  is true. Because the empty set contains no elements, it follows that  $x \in \emptyset$  is always false. It follows that the conditional statement  $x \in \emptyset \rightarrow x \in S$  is always true, because its hypothesis is always false and a conditional statement with a false hypothesis is true. Therefore,  $\forall x(x \in \emptyset \rightarrow x \in S)$  is true. Thus,  $\emptyset \subseteq S$ . Since  $\forall x(x \in S \rightarrow x \in S)$  is true,  $S \subseteq S$ .

Note that this is an example of a vacuous proof. To show that two sets  $A$  and  $B$  are equal, show that  $A \subseteq B$  and  $B \subseteq A$ .

Sets may have other sets as members. For instance, we have the sets  $A = \{\emptyset, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{a, b\}\}$  and  $B = \{x \mid x \text{ is a subset of the set } \{a, b\}\}$ . Note that these two sets are equal, that is,  $A = B$ . Also note that  $\{a\} \in A$ , but  $a \notin A$ .

Sets are used extensively in counting problems, and for such applications we need to discuss the sizes of sets.

**The Size of a Set:** Let  $S$  be a set. If there are exactly  $n$  distinct elements in  $S$  where  $n$  is a nonnegative integer, we say that  $S$  is a **finite set** and that  $n$  is the *cardinality* of  $S$ . The cardinality of  $S$  is denoted by  $|S|$ . A set is said to be **infinite** if it is not finite.

**Example:** Let  $A$  be the set of odd positive integers less than 10. Then  $|A| = 5$ .

**Example:** Let  $S$  be the set of letters in the English alphabet. Then  $|S| = 26$ .

**Example:** Because the null set has no elements, it follows that  $|\emptyset| = 0$ .

**Example:** The set of positive integers is infinite.

Many problems involve testing all combinations of elements of a set to see if they satisfy some property. To consider all such combinations of elements of a set  $S$ , we build a new set that has as its members all the subsets of  $S$ .

**Power Sets:** Given a set  $S$ , the *power set* of  $S$  is the set of all subsets of the set  $S$ . The power set of  $S$  is denoted by  $P(S)$ . If a set has  $n$  elements, then its power set has  $2^n$  elements.

**Example:** What is the power set of the set  $\{0, 1, 2\}$ ?

*Solution:* The power set  $P(\{0, 1, 2\})$  is the set of all subsets of  $\{0, 1, 2\}$ . Hence,

$$P(\{0, 1, 2\}) = \{\emptyset, \{0\}, \{1\}, \{2\}, \{0, 1\}, \{0, 2\}, \{1, 2\}, \{0, 1, 2\}\}.$$

Note that the empty set and the set itself are members of this set of subsets.

**Example:** What is the power set of the empty set? What is the power set of the set  $\{\emptyset\}$ ?

*Solution:* The empty set has exactly one subset, namely, itself. Consequently,  $P(\emptyset) = \{\emptyset\}$ .

The set  $\{\emptyset\}$  has exactly two subsets, namely,  $\emptyset$  and the set  $\{\emptyset\}$  itself. Therefore,

$$P(\{\emptyset\}) = \{\emptyset, \{\emptyset\}\}.$$

## Set Operations

Two, or more, sets can be combined in many different ways. For instance, starting with the set of mathematics majors at your school and the set of computer science majors at your school, we can form the set of students who are mathematics majors or computer science majors, the set

of students who are joint majors in mathematics and computer science, the set of all students not majoring in mathematics, and so on.

**Union of the sets:** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be sets. The *union* of the sets  $A$  and  $B$ , denoted by  $A \cup B$ , is the set that contains those elements that are either in  $A$  or in  $B$ , or in both. An element  $x$  belongs to the union of the sets  $A$  and  $B$  if and only if  $x$  belongs to  $A$  or  $x$  belongs to  $B$ . This tells us that

$$A \cup B = \{x \mid x \in A \vee x \in B\}.$$

**Example:** The union of the sets  $\{1, 3, 5\}$  and  $\{1, 2, 3\}$  is the set  $\{1, 2, 3, 5\}$ ; that is,  $\{1, 3, 5\} \cup \{1, 2, 3\} = \{1, 2, 3, 5\}$ .

**Example:** The union of the set of all computer science majors at your school and the set of all mathematics majors at your school is the set of students at your school who are majoring either in mathematics or in computer science (or in both).

**Intersection of the sets:** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be sets. The *intersection* of the sets  $A$  and  $B$ , denoted by  $A \cap B$ , is the set containing those elements in both  $A$  and  $B$ . An element  $x$  belongs to the intersection of the sets  $A$  and  $B$  if and only if  $x$  belongs to  $A$  and  $x$  belongs to  $B$ . This tells us that

$$A \cap B = \{x \mid x \in A \wedge x \in B\}.$$

**Example:** The intersection of the sets  $\{1, 3, 5\}$  and  $\{1, 2, 3\}$  is the set  $\{1, 3\}$ ; that is,  $\{1, 3, 5\} \cap \{1, 2, 3\} = \{1, 3\}$ .

**Disjoint sets:** Two sets are called *disjoint* if their intersection is the empty set.

**Example:** Let  $A = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}$  and  $B = \{2, 4, 6, 8, 10\}$ . Because  $A \cap B = \emptyset$ ,  $A$  and  $B$  are disjoint.

**Difference of sets:** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be sets. The *difference* of  $A$  and  $B$ , denoted by  $A - B$ , is the set containing those elements that are in  $A$  but not in  $B$ . The difference of  $A$  and  $B$  is also called the *complement of  $B$  with respect to  $A$* . An element  $x$  belongs to the difference of  $A$  and  $B$  if and only if  $x \in A$  and  $x \notin B$ . This tells us that

$$A - B = \{x \mid x \in A \wedge x \notin B\}.$$



**Remark:** The difference of sets  $A$  and  $B$  is sometimes denoted by  $A \setminus B$ .

**Example:** The difference of  $\{1, 3, 5\}$  and  $\{1, 2, 3\}$  is the set  $\{5\}$ ; that is,  $\{1, 3, 5\} - \{1, 2, 3\} = \{5\}$ . This is different from the difference of  $\{1, 2, 3\}$  and  $\{1, 3, 5\}$ , which is the set  $\{2\}$ .

**Complement of a set:** Let  $U$  be the universal set. The *complement* of the set  $A$ , denoted by  $\bar{A}$ , is the complement of  $A$  with respect to  $U$ . Therefore, the complement of the set  $A$  is  $U - A$ . An element belongs to  $\bar{A}$  if and only if  $x \notin A$ . This tells us that

$$\bar{A} = \{x \in U \mid x \notin A\}.$$

**Example:** Let  $A = \{a, e, i, o, u\}$  (where the universal set is the set of letters of the English alphabet). Then

$$\bar{A} = \{b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z\}.$$

**Example:** Let  $A$  be the set of positive integers greater than 10 (with universal set the set of all positive integers). Then  $\bar{A} = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$ .

**Example:** Prove that  $\overline{A \cap B} = \bar{A} \cup \bar{B}$ .

**Solution:** We will prove that the two sets  $\overline{A \cap B}$  and  $\bar{A} \cup \bar{B}$  are equal by showing that each set is a subset of the other. First, we will show that  $\overline{A \cap B} \subseteq \bar{A} \cup \bar{B}$ . We do this by showing that if  $x$  is in  $\overline{A \cap B}$ , then it must also be in  $\bar{A} \cup \bar{B}$ . Now suppose that  $x \in \overline{A \cap B}$ . By the definition of complement,  $x \notin A \cap B$ . Using the definition of intersection, we see that the proposition  $\neg((x \in A) \wedge (x \in B))$  is true. By applying De Morgan's law for propositions, we see that  $\neg(x \in A) \vee \neg(x \in B)$ . Using the definition of negation of propositions, we have  $x \notin A$  or  $x \notin B$ . Using the definition of the complement of a set, we see that this implies that  $x \in \bar{A}$  or  $x \in \bar{B}$ . Consequently, by the definition of union, we see that  $x \in \bar{A} \cup \bar{B}$ . We have now shown that  $\overline{A \cap B} \subseteq \bar{A} \cup \bar{B}$ . Next, we will show that  $\bar{A} \cup \bar{B} \subseteq \overline{A \cap B}$ . We do this by showing that if  $x$  is in  $\bar{A} \cup \bar{B}$ , then it must also be in  $\overline{A \cap B}$ . Now suppose that  $x \in \bar{A} \cup \bar{B}$ . By the definition of union, we know that  $x \in \bar{A}$  or  $x \in \bar{B}$ . Using the definition of complement, we see that  $x \notin A$  or  $x \notin B$ . Consequently, the proposition  $\neg((x \in A) \wedge (x \in B))$  is true. By De Morgan's law for propositions, we conclude that  $\neg((x \in A) \wedge (x \in B))$  is true. By the definition of intersection, it follows that  $x \notin A \cap B$ . We now use the definition of complement to conclude that  $x \in \overline{A \cap B}$ . This shows that  $\bar{A} \cup \bar{B} \subseteq \overline{A \cap B}$ . Because we

have shown that each set is a subset of the other, the two sets are equal, and the identity is proved.

### Principle of inclusion–exclusion.

The subtraction rule: Suppose that a task can be done in one of two ways, but some of the ways to do it are common to both ways. In this situation, we cannot use the sum rule to count the number of ways to do the task. If we add the number of ways to do the tasks in these two ways, we get an overcount of the total number of ways to do it, because the ways to do the task that are common to the two ways are counted twice. To correctly count the number of ways to do the two tasks, we must subtract the number of ways that are counted twice. This leads us to an important counting rule.

“If a task can be done in either  $n_1$  ways or  $n_2$  ways, then the number of ways to do the task is  $n_1 + n_2$  minus the number of ways to do the task that are common to the two different ways.”

The subtraction rule is also known as the **principle of inclusion–exclusion**, especially when it is used to count the number of elements in the union of two sets. Suppose that  $A_1$  and  $A_2$  are sets. Then, there are  $|A_1|$  ways to select an element from  $A_1$  and  $|A_2|$  ways to select an element from  $A_2$ . The number of ways to select an element from  $A_1$  or from  $A_2$ , that is, the number of ways to select an element from their union, is the sum of the number of ways to select an element from  $A_1$  and the number of ways to select an element from  $A_2$ , minus the number of ways to select an element that is in both  $A_1$  and  $A_2$ . Because there are  $|A_1 \cup A_2|$  ways to select an element in either  $A_1$  or in  $A_2$ , and  $|A_1 \cap A_2|$  ways to select an element common to both sets, we have

$$|A_1 \cup A_2| = |A_1| + |A_2| - |A_1 \cap A_2|.$$

**Example:** How many bit strings of length eight start with a 1 bit or end with the two bits 00?

*Solution:* we need three counting problems to solve before we can apply the principle of inclusion–exclusion. We can construct a bit string of length eight that starts with a 1 bit or ends with the two bits 00, by constructing a bit string of length eight beginning with a 1 bit or by constructing a bit string of length eight that ends with the two bits 00.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ \hline \underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}} \\ 2^7 = 128 \text{ ways} \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}} \quad 0 \quad 0 \\ 2^6 = 64 \text{ ways} \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 1 \quad \underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}} \quad 0 \quad 0 \\ 2^5 = 32 \text{ ways} \end{array} \end{array}$$

We can construct a bit string of length eight that begins with a 1 in  $2^7 = 128$  ways. This follows by the product rule, because the first bit can be chosen in only one way and each of the other seven bits can be chosen in two ways. Similarly, we can construct a bit string of length eight ending with the two bits 00, in  $2^6 = 64$  ways. This follows by the product rule, because each of the first six bits can be chosen in two ways and the last two bits can be chosen in only one way. Some of the ways to construct a bit string of length eight starting with a 1 are the same as the ways to construct a bit string of length eight that ends with the two bits 00. There are  $2^5 = 32$  ways to construct such a string. This follows by the product rule, because the first bit can be chosen in only one way, each of the second through the sixth bits can be chosen in two ways, and the last two bits can be chosen in one way. Consequently, the number of bit strings of length eight that begin with a 1 or end with a 00, which equals the number of ways to construct a bit string of length eight that begins with a 1 or that ends with 00, equals  $128 + 64 - 32 = 160$ .

**Example:** How many positive integers not exceeding 100 are divisible either by 4 or by 6?

Solution: Let  $A$  be the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible by 4 and  $B$  be the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible by 6. Then  $A \cap B$  is the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible by 4 and 6. That is,  $A \cap B$  is the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible by 12. Also  $A \cup B$  is the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible either by 4 or by 6. Then  $|A| = \lfloor 100/4 \rfloor = 25$ ,  $|B| = \lfloor 100/6 \rfloor = 16$ ,  $|A \cap B| = \lfloor 100/12 \rfloor = 8$ . Thus,

$$|A \cup B| = |A| + |B| - |A \cap B| = 25 + 16 - 8 = 33.$$

Therefore, there are 33 positive integers not exceeding 100 are divisible either by 4 or by 6.

More generally if  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_m$  are finite sets, then

$$\begin{aligned} |A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_m| = & \sum_{i=1}^m |A_i| - \sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq m} |A_i \cap A_j| + \sum_{1 \leq i < j < k \leq m} |A_i \cap A_j \cap A_k| - \dots \\ & + (-1)^{m-1} |A_1 \cap A_2 \cap \dots \cap A_m|. \end{aligned}$$

**Example:** How many positive integers not exceeding 100 are divisible by 4, or by 5, or by 6?

Solution: Let  $A$  be the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible by 4,  $B$  be the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible by 5 and

$C$  be the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible by 6. Then

$A \cap B$  is the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible by 4 and 5,

$A \cap C$  is the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible by 4 and 6,

$B \cap C$  is the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible by 5 and 6 and

$A \cap B \cap C$  is the set of positive integers not exceeding 100 that are divisible by 4 and 5 and 6.

Then

$$|A| = \left\lfloor \frac{100}{4} \right\rfloor = 25, |B| = \left\lfloor \frac{100}{5} \right\rfloor = 20, |C| = \left\lfloor \frac{100}{6} \right\rfloor = 16,$$

$$|A \cap B| = \left\lfloor \frac{100}{20} \right\rfloor = 5, |A \cap C| = \left\lfloor \frac{100}{12} \right\rfloor = 8, |B \cap C| = \left\lfloor \frac{100}{30} \right\rfloor = 3, |A \cap B \cap C| = \left\lfloor \frac{100}{60} \right\rfloor = 1.$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} |A \cup B \cup C| &= |A| + |B| + |C| - |A \cap B| - |A \cap C| - |B \cap C| + |A \cap B \cap C| \\ &= 25 + 20 + 16 - 5 - 8 - 3 + 1 = 46. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, there are 46 positive integers not exceeding 100 are divisible by 4, or by 5, or by 6.

### Cartesian Products

The order of elements in a collection is often important. Because sets are unordered, a different structure is needed to represent ordered collections. This is provided by ordered  $n$ -tuples. The *ordered  $n$ -tuple*  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$  is the ordered collection that has  $a_1$  as its first element,  $a_2$  as its second element, . . . , and  $a_n$  as its  $n$ th element. We say that two ordered  $n$ -tuples are equal if and only if each corresponding pair of their elements are equal. In other words,  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)$  if and only if  $a_i = b_i$ , for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . In particular, ordered 2-tuples are called **ordered pairs**. The ordered pairs  $(a, b)$  and  $(c, d)$  are equal if and only if  $a = c$  and  $b = d$ . Note that  $(a, b)$  and  $(b, a)$  are not equal unless  $a = b$ .

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be nonempty sets. The *Cartesian product* of  $A$  and  $B$ , denoted by  $A \times B$ , is the set of all ordered pairs  $(a, b)$ , where  $a \in A$  and  $b \in B$ . Hence,

$$A \times B = \{(a, b) \mid a \in A \wedge b \in B\}.$$

**Example:** What is the Cartesian product of  $A = \{1, 2\}$  and  $B = \{a, b, c\}$ ?

**Solution:** The Cartesian product  $A \times B$  is

$$A \times B = \{(1, a), (1, b), (1, c), (2, a), (2, b), (2, c)\}.$$

Note that the Cartesian products  $A \times B$  and  $B \times A$  are not equal, unless  $A = B$ .

**Definition:** The *Cartesian product* of the sets  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$ , denoted by  $A_1 \times A_2 \times \dots \times A_n$ , is the set of ordered  $n$ -tuples  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ , where  $a_i$  belongs to  $A_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . In other words,

$$A_1 \times A_2 \times \dots \times A_n = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) | a_i \in A_i \text{ for } i = 1, 2, \dots, n\}.$$

We use the notation  $A^2$  to denote  $A \times A$ , the Cartesian product of the set  $A$  with itself. Similarly,  $A^3 = A \times A \times A$ ,  $A^4 = A \times A \times A \times A$ , and so on. More generally,

$$A^n = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) | a_i \in A \text{ for } i = 1, 2, \dots, n\}.$$

**Example:** Suppose that  $A = \{1, 2\}$ . It follows that  $A^2 = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (2, 1), (2, 2)\}$  and  $A^3 = \{(1, 1, 1), (1, 1, 2), (1, 2, 1), (1, 2, 2), (2, 1, 1), (2, 1, 2), (2, 2, 1), (2, 2, 2)\}$ .

## Relations

Any subset of a cartesian product of finite number of sets is known as a relation.

\*\*\*\*\*

**Binary relation:** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be sets. A binary relation *from*  $A$  *to*  $B$  is a subset of  $A \times B$ .

In other words, a binary relation from  $A$  to  $B$  is a set  $R$  of ordered pairs where the first element of each ordered pair comes from  $A$  and the second element comes from  $B$ . We use the notation  $a R b$  to denote that  $(a, b) \in R$ . Moreover, when  $(a, b)$  belongs to  $R$ ,  $a$  is said to be related to  $b$  by  $R$ . Binary relations represent relationships between the elements of two sets. The most direct way to express a relationship between elements of two sets is to use ordered pairs made up of two related elements. For this reason, sets of ordered pairs are called binary relations.

**Example:** Let  $A = \{0, 1, 2\}$  and  $B = \{a, b\}$ . Then  $\{(0, a), (0, b), (1, a), (2, b)\}$  is a relation from  $A$  to  $B$ .

**Note:** A relation on a set  $A$  is a relation from  $A$  to  $A$ . In other words, a relation on a set  $A$  is a subset of  $A \times A$ .

**Example:** Let  $A$  be the set  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ . Which ordered pairs are in the relation  $R = \{(a, b) \mid a \text{ divides } b\}$ ?

**Solution:** Because  $(a, b)$  is in  $R$  if and only if  $a$  and  $b$  are positive integers not exceeding 4 such that  $a$  divides  $b$ , we see that

$$R = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (2, 2), (2, 4), (3, 3), (4, 4)\}.$$

**Example:** How many relations are there on a set with  $n$  elements?

**Solution:** A relation on a set  $A$  is a subset of  $A \times A$ . Because  $A \times A$  has  $n^2$  elements when  $A$  has  $n$  elements, and a set with  $m$  elements has  $2^m$  subsets, there are  $2^{n^2}$  subsets of  $A \times A$ . Thus, there are  $2^{n^2}$  relations on a set with  $n$  elements. For example, there are  $2^{3^2} = 2^9 = 512$  relations on the set  $\{a, b, c\}$ .

**Properties of Relations:** Let  $R$  be a relation on a set  $A$ . The relation  $R$  is called *reflexive* if  $(a, a) \in R$  for every element  $a \in A$ . The relation  $R$  is called *symmetric* if  $(b, a) \in R$  whenever  $(a, b) \in R$ , for all  $a, b \in A$ . In the relation  $R$ , if  $(a, b) \in R$  and  $(b, a) \in R$ , imply  $a = b$  then  $R$  is called *antisymmetric*. The relation  $R$  is called *transitive* if  $(a, b) \in R$  and  $(b, c) \in R$ , then  $(a, c) \in R$ , for all  $a, b, c \in A$ .

**Example:** Consider the following relations on  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ :

$$R_1 = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (2, 1), (2, 2), (3, 4), (4, 1), (4, 4)\},$$

$$R_2 = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (2, 1)\},$$

$$R_3 = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 4), (2, 1), (2, 2), (3, 3), (4, 1), (4, 4)\},$$

$$R_4 = \{(2, 1), (3, 1), (3, 2), (4, 1), (4, 2), (4, 3)\},$$

$$R_5 = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (2, 2), (2, 3), (2, 4), (3, 3), (3, 4), (4, 4)\},$$

$$R_6 = \{(3, 4)\}.$$

Which of these relations are reflexive, symmetric, antisymmetric and transitive?

**Solution:** The relations  $R_3$  and  $R_5$  are reflexive because they both contain all pairs of the form  $(a, a)$ , namely,  $(1, 1)$ ,  $(2, 2)$ ,  $(3, 3)$ , and  $(4, 4)$ . The other relations are not reflexive because they

do not contain all of these ordered pairs. In particular,  $R_1, R_2, R_4,$  and  $R_6$  are not reflexive because  $(3, 3)$  is not in any of these relations.

The relations  $R_2$  and  $R_3$  are symmetric, because in each case  $(b, a)$  belongs to the relation whenever  $(a, b)$  does. For  $R_2$ , the only thing to check is that both  $(2, 1)$  and  $(1, 2)$  are in the relation. For  $R_3$ , it is necessary to check that both  $(1, 2)$  and  $(2, 1)$  belong to the relation, and  $(1, 4)$  and  $(4, 1)$  belong to the relation. None of the other relations is symmetric. This is done by finding a pair  $(a, b)$  such that it is in the relation but  $(b, a)$  is not.

The relations  $R_4, R_5,$  and  $R_6$  are all antisymmetric. For each of these relations there is no pair of elements  $a$  and  $b$  with  $a \neq b$  such that both  $(a, b)$  and  $(b, a)$  belong to the relation. None of the other relations is antisymmetric. This is done by finding a pair  $(a, b)$  with  $a \neq b$  such that  $(a, b)$  and  $(b, a)$  are both in the relation.

The relations  $R_4, R_5,$  and  $R_6$  are transitive. For each of these relations, we can show that it is transitive by verifying that if  $(a, b)$  and  $(b, c)$  belong to this relation, then  $(a, c)$  also does. For instance,  $R_4$  is transitive, because  $(3, 2)$  and  $(2, 1), (4, 2)$  and  $(2, 1), (4, 3)$  and  $(3, 1),$  and  $(4, 3)$  and  $(3, 2)$  are the only such sets of pairs, and  $(3, 1), (4, 1),$  and  $(4, 2)$  belong to  $R_4$ .  $R_1$  is not transitive because  $(3, 4)$  and  $(4, 1)$  belong to  $R_1$ , but  $(3, 1)$  does not.  $R_2$  is not transitive because  $(2, 1)$  and  $(1, 2)$  belong to  $R_2$ , but  $(2, 2)$  does not.  $R_3$  is not transitive because  $(4, 1)$  and  $(1, 2)$  belong to  $R_3$ , but  $(4, 2)$  does not.

**Example:** Is the “divides” relation on the set of positive integers reflexive, symmetric, antisymmetric and transitive?

**Solution:** Because  $a \mid a$  whenever  $a$  is a positive integer, the “divides” relation is reflexive. (Note that if we replace the set of positive integers with the set of all integers the relation is not reflexive because by definition 0 does not divide 0.) This relation is not symmetric because  $1 \mid 2$ , but  $2 \nmid 1$ . It is antisymmetric, for if  $a$  and  $b$  are positive integers with  $a \mid b$  and  $b \mid a$ , then  $a = b$ . Suppose that  $a$  divides  $b$  and  $b$  divides  $c$ . Then there are positive integers  $k$  and  $l$  such that  $b = ak$  and  $c = bl$ . Hence,  $c = a(kl)$ , so  $a$  divides  $c$ . It follows that this relation is transitive.

**Example:** How many reflexive relations are there on a set with  $n$  elements?

**Solution:** A relation  $R$  on a set  $A$  is a subset of  $A \times A$ . Consequently, a relation is determined by specifying whether each of the  $n^2$  ordered pairs in  $A \times A$  is in  $R$ . However, if  $R$  is reflexive, each of the  $n$  ordered pairs  $(a, a)$  must be in  $R$  for  $a \in A$ . Each of the other  $n^2 - n$  ordered pairs of the form  $(a, b)$ , where  $a \neq b$ , may or may not be in  $R$ . Hence, by the product rule for counting, there are  $2^{n(n-1)}$  reflexive relations [this is the number of ways to choose whether each element  $(a, b)$ , with  $a \neq b$ , belongs to  $R$ ].

**Example:** How many symmetric relations are there on a set with  $n$  elements?

**Example:** How many reflexive and symmetric relations are there on a set with  $n$  elements?

**Example:** The relation  $\Delta = \{(a, a) \mid a \in A\}$  is called the **diagonal relation** on  $A$ .

### Combining Relations

**Example:** Let  $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$  and  $B = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ . The relations  $R_1 = \{(1, 1), (2, 2), (3, 3)\}$  and  $R_2 = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4)\}$  can be combined to obtain  $R_1 \cup R_2 = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4), (2, 2), (3, 3)\}$ ,  $R_1 \cap R_2 = \{(1, 1)\}$ ,  $R_1 - R_2 = \{(2, 2), (3, 3)\}$  and  $R_2 - R_1 = \{(1, 2), (1, 3), (1, 4)\}$ .

**Example:** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be the set of all students and the set of all courses at a school, respectively. Suppose that  $R_1$  consists of all ordered pairs  $(a, b)$ , where  $a$  is a student who has taken course  $b$ , and  $R_2$  consists of all ordered pairs  $(a, b)$ , where  $a$  is a student who requires course  $b$  to graduate. What are the relations  $R_1 \cup R_2, R_1 \cap R_2, R_1 \oplus R_2, R_1 - R_2$ , and  $R_2 - R_1$ ?

**Solution:** The relation  $R_1 \cup R_2$  consists of all ordered pairs  $(a, b)$ , where  $a$  is a student who either has taken course  $b$  or needs course  $b$  to graduate, and  $R_1 \cap R_2$  is the set of all ordered pairs  $(a, b)$ , where  $a$  is a student who has taken course  $b$  and needs this course to graduate. Also,  $R_1 \oplus R_2$  consists of all ordered pairs  $(a, b)$ , where student  $a$  has taken course  $b$  but does not need it to graduate or needs course  $b$  to graduate but has not taken it.  $R_1 - R_2$  is the set of ordered pairs  $(a, b)$ , where  $a$  has taken course  $b$  but does not need it to graduate; that is,  $b$  is an elective course that  $a$  has taken.  $R_2 - R_1$  is the set of all ordered pairs  $(a, b)$ , where  $b$  is a course that  $a$  needs to graduate but has not taken by  $a$ .



**Example:** Let  $R_1$  be the “less than” relation on the set of real numbers and let  $R_2$  be the “greater than” relation on the set of real numbers, that is,  $R_1 = \{(x, y) \mid x < y\}$  and  $R_2 = \{(x, y) \mid x > y\}$ . What are  $R_1 \cup R_2$ ,  $R_1 \cap R_2$ ,  $R_1 - R_2$ ,  $R_2 - R_1$ , and  $R_1 \oplus R_2$ ?

**Solution:** We note that  $(x, y) \in R_1 \cup R_2$  if and only if  $(x, y) \in R_1$  or  $(x, y) \in R_2$ . Hence,  $(x, y) \in R_1 \cup R_2$  if and only if  $x < y$  or  $x > y$ . Because the condition  $x < y$  or  $x > y$  is the same as the condition  $x \neq y$ , it follows that  $R_1 \cup R_2 = \{(x, y) \mid x \neq y\}$ . In other words, the union of the “less than” relation and the “greater than” relation is the “not equals” relation. It is impossible for a pair  $(x, y)$  to belong to both  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  because it is impossible that  $x < y$  and  $x > y$ . It follows that  $R_1 \cap R_2 = \emptyset$ . We also see that  $R_1 - R_2 = R_1$ ,  $R_2 - R_1 = R_2$ , and  $R_1 \oplus R_2 = (R_1 \cup R_2) - (R_1 \cap R_2) = \{(x, y) \mid x \neq y\}$ .

**Composition of relations:** Let  $R$  be a relation from a set  $A$  to a set  $B$  and  $S$  a relation from  $B$  to a set  $C$ . The *composite* of  $R$  and  $S$  is the relation consisting of ordered pairs  $(a, c)$ , where  $a \in A$ ,  $c \in C$ , and for which there exists an element  $b \in B$  such that  $(a, b) \in R$  and  $(b, c) \in S$ . We denote the composite of  $R$  and  $S$  by  $S \circ R$ .

**Example:** What is the composite of the relations  $R$  and  $S$ , where  $R$  is the relation from  $\{1, 2, 3\}$  to  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$  with  $R = \{(1, 1), (1, 4), (2, 3), (3, 1), (3, 4)\}$  and  $S$  is the relation from  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$  to  $\{0, 1, 2\}$  with  $S = \{(1, 0), (2, 0), (3, 1), (3, 2), (4, 1)\}$ ?

**Solution:**  $S \circ R$  is constructed using all ordered pairs in  $R$  and ordered pairs in  $S$ , where the second element of the ordered pair in  $R$  agrees with the first element of the ordered pair in  $S$ . For example, the ordered pairs  $(2, 3) \in R$  and  $(3, 1) \in S$  produce the ordered pair  $(2, 1) \in S \circ R$ . Computing all the ordered pairs in the composite, we find  $S \circ R = \{(1, 0), (1, 1), (2, 1), (2, 2), (3, 0), (3, 1)\}$ .

**Example: Composing the Parent Relation with Itself.** Let  $R$  be the relation on the set of all people such that  $(a, b) \in R$  if person  $a$  is a parent of person  $b$ . Then  $(a, c) \in R \circ R$  if and only if there is a person  $b$  such that  $(a, b) \in R$  and  $(b, c) \in R$ , that is, if and only if there is a person  $b$  such that  $a$  is a parent of  $b$  and  $b$  is a parent of  $c$ . In other words,  $(a, c) \in R \circ R$  if and only if  $a$  is a grandparent of  $c$ .

The powers of a relation  $R$  can be recursively defined from the definition of a composite of two relations. Let  $R$  be a relation on the set  $A$ . The powers  $R^n, n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ , are defined recursively by  $R^1 = R$  and  $R^{n+1} = R^n \circ R$ .

The definition shows that  $R^2 = R \circ R$ ,  $R^3 = R^2 \circ R = (R \circ R) \circ R$ , and so on.

**Example:** Let  $R = \{(1, 1), (2, 1), (3, 2), (4, 3)\}$ . Find the powers  $R^n, n = 2, 3, 4, \dots$

**Solution:** Because  $R^2 = R \circ R$ , we find that  $R^2 = \{(1, 1), (2, 1), (3, 1), (4, 2)\}$ . Furthermore, because  $R^3 = R^2 \circ R = \{(1, 1), (2, 1), (3, 1), (4, 1)\}$ . Additional computation shows that  $R^4$  is the same as  $R^3$ , so  $R^4 = \{(1, 1), (2, 1), (3, 1), (4, 1)\}$ . It also follows that  $R^n = R^3$  for  $n = 5, 6, 7, \dots$

**Theorem:** The relation  $R$  on a set  $A$  is transitive if and only if  $R^n \subseteq R$  for  $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$

**Proof:** We first prove the “if” part of the theorem. We suppose that  $R^n \subseteq R$  for  $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ . In particular,  $R^2 \subseteq R$ . To see that this implies  $R$  is transitive, note that if  $(a, b) \in R$  and  $(b, c) \in R$ , then by the definition of composition,  $(a, c) \in R^2$ . Because  $R^2 \subseteq R$ , this means that  $(a, c) \in R$ . Hence,  $R$  is transitive. We will use mathematical induction to prove the only if part of the theorem. Note that this part of the theorem is trivially true for  $n = 1$ . Assume that  $R^n \subseteq R$ , where  $n$  is a positive integer. This is the inductive hypothesis. To complete the inductive step, we must show that this implies that  $R^{n+1}$  is also a subset of  $R$ . To show this, assume that  $(a, b) \in R^{n+1}$ . Then, because  $R^{n+1} = R^n \circ R$ , there is an element  $x$  with  $x \in A$  such that  $(a, x) \in R$  and  $(x, b) \in R^n$ . The inductive hypothesis, namely, that  $R^n \subseteq R$ , implies that  $(x, b) \in R$ . Furthermore, because  $R$  is transitive, and  $(a, x) \in R$  and  $(x, b) \in R$ , it follows that  $(a, b) \in R$ . This shows that  $R^{n+1} \subseteq R$ , completing the proof.

**Inverse relation:** Let  $R$  be a relation from a set  $A$  to a set  $B$ . The inverse relation of  $R$  is a relation from  $B$  to  $A$ , denoted by  $R^{-1}$ , given by the set  $\{(b, a) \mid (a, b) \in R\}$ . The complementary relation  $\bar{R}$  is the set of ordered pairs  $\{(a, b) \mid (a, b) \notin R\}$ .

**Example:** Let  $R = \{(a, b) \mid a < b\}$  be the relation on the set of integers. Then the inverse relation of

$$R^{-1} = \{(b, a) | (a, b) \in R\} = \{(b, a) | a < b\} = \{(b, a) | b > a\}.$$

And the complementary relation of  $R$

$$\bar{R} = \{(a, b) | (a, b) \notin R\} = \{(a, b) | a \not< b\} = \{(a, b) | a \geq b\}.$$

**Example:** Let  $R = \{(a, b) | a \text{ divides } b\}$  be the relation on the set of positive integers. Then

$$R^{-1} = \{(b, a) | (a, b) \in R\} = \{(b, a) | a \text{ divides } b\} = \{(b, a) | b \text{ is divisible by } a\}.$$

And

$$\bar{R} = \{(a, b) | (a, b) \notin R\} = \{(a, b) | a \text{ does not divide } b\}.$$

**Example:** Let  $R$  and  $S$  be the relations with  $R \subseteq S$ , then  $R^{-1} \subseteq S^{-1}$ .

**Example:** Let  $R$  and  $S$  be two relations, then  $(R \cap S)^{-1} = R^{-1} \cap S^{-1}$ ,  $(R \cup S)^{-1} = R^{-1} \cup S^{-1}$  and  $(S \circ R)^{-1} = R^{-1} \circ S^{-1}$ .

**Example:** On a set of  $n$  elements the number of reflexive relations is  $2^{n(n-1)}$ , number of symmetric relations is  $2^{\frac{n(n+1)}{2}}$  and the number of reflexive and symmetric relations is  $2^{\frac{n(n-1)}{2}}$ .

### Representing Relations Using Matrices

A relation between finite sets can be represented using a zero–one matrix. Suppose that  $R$  is a relation from  $A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m\}$  to  $B = \{b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n\}$ . The relation  $R$  can be represented by the matrix  $M_R = [m_{ij}]$ , where

$$m_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } (a_i, b_j) \in R \\ 0 & \text{if } (a_i, b_j) \notin R \end{cases}$$

In other words, the zero–one matrix representing  $R$  has a 1 as its  $(i, j)$  entry when  $a_i$  is related to  $b_j$ , and a 0 in this position if  $a_i$  is not related to  $b_j$ . (Such a representation depends on the orderings used for  $A$  and  $B$ .)

**Example:** Suppose that  $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$  and  $B = \{1, 2\}$ . Let  $R$  be the relation from  $A$  to  $B$  containing  $(a, b)$  if  $a > b$ . What is the matrix representing  $R$ ?

**Solution:** Because  $R = \{(2, 1), (3, 1), (3, 2)\}$ , the matrix for  $R$  is

$$M_R = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Example:** Let  $A = \{a_1, a_2, a_3\}$  and  $B = \{b_1, b_2, b_3, b_4, b_5\}$ . Which ordered pairs are in the relation  $R$  represented by the matrix

$$M_R = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}?$$

*Solution:* Because  $R$  consists of those ordered pairs  $(a_i, b_j)$  with  $m_{ij} = 1$ , it follows that  $R = \{(a_1, b_2), (a_2, b_1), (a_2, b_3), (a_2, b_4), (a_3, b_1), (a_3, b_3), (a_3, b_5)\}$ .

The matrix of a relation on a set, which is a square matrix, can be used to determine whether the relation has certain properties. Recall that a relation  $R$  on  $A$  is reflexive if  $(a, a) \in R$  whenever  $a \in A$ . Thus,  $R$  is reflexive if and only if  $(a_i, a_i) \in R$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Hence,  $R$  is reflexive if and only if  $m_{ii} = 1$ , for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . In other words,  $R$  is reflexive if all the elements on the main diagonal of  $M_R$  are equal to 1. Note that the elements off the main diagonal can be either 0 or 1.

The relation  $R$  is symmetric if  $(a, b) \in R$  implies that  $(b, a) \in R$ . Consequently, the relation  $R$  on the set  $A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$  is symmetric if and only if  $(a_j, a_i) \in R$  whenever  $(a_i, a_j) \in R$ . In terms of the entries of  $M_R$ ,  $R$  is symmetric if and only if  $m_{ji} = 1$  whenever  $m_{ij} = 1$ . This also means  $m_{ji} = 0$  whenever  $m_{ij} = 0$ . Consequently,  $R$  is symmetric if and only if  $m_{ij} = m_{ji}$ , for all pairs of integers  $i$  and  $j$  with  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$  and  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Recalling the definition of the transpose of a matrix, we see that  $R$  is symmetric if and only if  $M_R = M_R^T$  that is, if  $M_R$  is a symmetric matrix.

The relation  $R$  is antisymmetric if and only if  $(a, b) \in R$  and  $(b, a) \in R$  imply that  $a = b$ . Consequently, the matrix of an antisymmetric relation has the property that if  $m_{ij} = 1$  with  $i \neq j$ , then  $m_{ji} = 0$ . Also, it may be both  $m_{ij} = 0$  and  $m_{ji} = 0$ . In other words,  $m_{ij} = 0$  or  $m_{ji} = 0$  when  $i \neq j$ .

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & & & & \\ & 1 & & & \\ & & \ddots & & \\ & & & 1 & \\ & & & & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{bmatrix} & 1 & & & \\ 1 & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{bmatrix} & 1 & & & \\ & & & & \\ 0 & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \end{bmatrix}$$

**Example:** Suppose that the relation  $R$  on a set is represented by the matrix  $M_R = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ . Is

$R$  reflexive, symmetric, and/or antisymmetric?

*Solution:* Because all the diagonal elements of this matrix are equal to 1,  $R$  is reflexive. Moreover, because  $M_R$  is symmetric, it follows that  $R$  is symmetric. It is also easy to see that  $R$  is not antisymmetric as  $m_{12} = 1 = m_{21}$ .

A matrix all of whose entries are either 0 or 1 is called a **zero–one matrix**. Zero–one matrices are often used to represent discrete structures. Algorithms using these structures are based on Boolean arithmetic with zero–one matrices. This arithmetic is based on the Boolean operations  $\wedge$  and  $\vee$ , which operate on pairs of bits, defined by

$$b_1 \wedge b_2 = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } b_1 = b_2 = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

and

$$b_1 \vee b_2 = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } b_1 = 1 \text{ or } b_2 = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

**Definition:** Let  $A = [a_{ij}]$  and  $B = [b_{ij}]$  are two  $m \times n$  zero–one matrices. Then the *join* of  $A$  and  $B$  is the zero–one matrix with  $(i, j)$ th entry  $a_{ij} \vee b_{ij}$ . The join of  $A$  and  $B$  is denoted by  $A \vee B$ . The *meet* of  $A$  and  $B$  is the zero–one matrix with  $(i, j)$ th entry  $a_{ij} \wedge b_{ij}$ . The meet of  $A$  and  $B$  is denoted by  $A \wedge B$ .

**Example:** Find the join and meet of the zero–one matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

*Solution:* We find that the join of  $A$  and  $B$  is

$$A \vee B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \vee 1 & 0 \vee 0 & 1 \vee 0 \\ 0 \vee 1 & 1 \vee 1 & 0 \vee 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

and the meet of  $A$  and  $B$  is

$$A \wedge B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \wedge 1 & 0 \wedge 0 & 1 \wedge 0 \\ 0 \wedge 1 & 1 \wedge 1 & 0 \wedge 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Definition:** Let  $A = [a_{ij}]$  be an  $m \times k$  zero–one matrix and  $B = [b_{ij}]$  be a  $k \times n$  zero–one matrix. Then the *Boolean product* of  $A$  and  $B$ , denoted by  $A \odot B$ , is the  $m \times n$  matrix with  $(i, j)$ th entry  $c_{ij}$  where

$$c_{ij} = (a_{i1} \wedge b_{1j}) \vee (a_{i2} \wedge b_{2j}) \vee \cdots \vee (a_{ik} \wedge b_{kj}).$$

**Example:** Find the Boolean product of  $A$  and  $B$ , where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Solution:** The Boolean product  $A \odot B$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} A \odot B &= \begin{bmatrix} (1 \wedge 1) \vee (1 \wedge 1) & (1 \wedge 0) \vee (1 \wedge 1) & (1 \wedge 1) \vee (1 \wedge 0) \\ (0 \wedge 1) \vee (1 \wedge 1) & (0 \wedge 0) \vee (1 \wedge 1) & (0 \wedge 1) \vee (1 \wedge 0) \\ (0 \wedge 1) \vee (0 \wedge 1) & (0 \wedge 0) \vee (0 \wedge 1) & (0 \wedge 1) \vee (0 \wedge 0) \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 \vee 1 & 0 \vee 1 & 1 \vee 0 \\ 0 \vee 1 & 0 \vee 1 & 0 \vee 0 \\ 0 \vee 0 & 0 \vee 0 & 0 \vee 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

**Definition:** Let  $A$  be a square zero–one matrix and let  $r$  be a positive integer. The  $r$ th *Boolean power* of  $A$  is the Boolean product of  $r$  factors of  $A$ . The  $r$ th Boolean product of  $A$  is denoted by  $A^{[r]}$ . Hence

$$A^{[r]} = A \odot A \odot A \odot \cdots \odot A, \text{ } r \text{ times}$$

(This is well defined because the Boolean product of matrices is associative.) We also define  $A^{[0]}$  to be the identity matrix  $I_n$ .

The Boolean operations join and meet can be used to find the matrices representing the union and the intersection of two relations. Suppose that  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  are relations on a set  $A$  represented by the matrices  $M_{R_1}$  and  $M_{R_2}$ , respectively. The matrix representing the inverse, union and intersection of these relations are

$$M_{R_1^{-1}} = (M_{R_1})^T, \quad M_{R_1 \cup R_2} = M_{R_1} \vee M_{R_2} \text{ and } M_{R_1 \cap R_2} = M_{R_1} \wedge M_{R_2}.$$

We now turn our attention to determining the matrix for the composite of relations. This matrix can be found using the Boolean product of the matrices for these relations. In particular, suppose that  $R$  is a relation from  $A$  to  $B$  and  $S$  is a relation from  $B$  to  $C$ . Suppose that  $A, B$ , and  $C$  have  $m, n$ , and  $p$  elements, respectively. Let the zero–one matrices for  $S \circ R, R$ , and  $S$  be  $M_{S \circ R} =$

$[t_{ij}]$ ,  $M_R = [r_{ij}]$ , and  $M_S = [s_{ij}]$ , respectively (these matrices have sizes  $m \times p$ ,  $m \times n$ , and  $n \times p$ , respectively). The ordered pair  $(a_i, c_j)$  belongs to  $S \circ R$  if and only if there is an element  $b_k$  such that  $(a_i, b_k)$  belongs to  $R$  and  $(b_k, c_j)$  belongs to  $S$ . It follows that  $t_{ij} = 1$  if and only if  $r_{ik} = s_{kj} = 1$  for some  $k$ . From the definition of the Boolean product, this means that

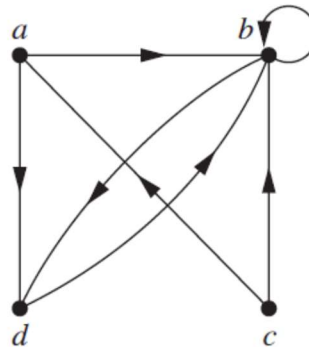
$$M_{S \circ R} = M_R \odot M_S.$$

**Note:** We have  $M_{R^n} = M_R \odot M_R \odot \cdots \odot M_R = M_R^{[n]}$ .

### Representing Relations Using Digraphs

**Definition:** A *directed graph*, or *digraph*, consists of a set  $V$  of vertices (or *nodes*) together with a set  $E$  of ordered pairs of elements of  $V$  called *edges* (or *arcs*). The vertex  $a$  is called the *initial vertex* of the edge  $(a, b)$ , and the vertex  $b$  is called the *terminal vertex* of this edge. An edge of the form  $(a, a)$  is represented using an arc from the vertex  $a$  back to itself. Such an edge is called a **loop**.

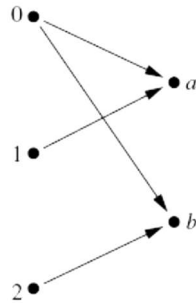
**Example:** The directed graph with vertices  $\{a, b, c, d\}$ , and edges  $\{(a, b), (a, d), (b, b), (b, d), (c, a), (c, b), (d, b)\}$  is displayed below:



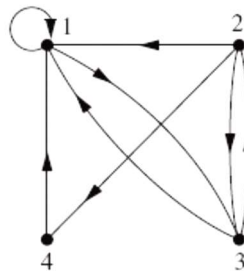
The relation  $R$  on a set  $A$  is represented by the directed graph that has the elements of  $A$  as its vertices and the ordered pairs  $(a, b)$ , where  $(a, b) \in R$ , as edges. This assignment sets up a one-to-one correspondence between the relations on a set  $A$  and the directed graphs with  $A$  as their set of vertices. Thus, every statement about relations corresponds to a statement about directed graphs, and vice versa. Directed graphs give a visual display of information about relations. As such, they are often used to study relations and their properties.

Note that relations from a set  $A$  to a set  $B$  can be represented by a directed graph where there is a vertex for each element of  $A$  and a vertex for each element of  $B$ . However, when  $A = B$ , such representation provides much less insight than the digraph representations described here.

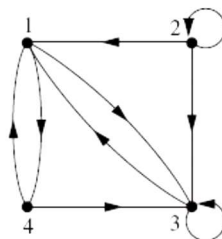
**Example:** Let  $A = \{0, 1, 2\}$  and  $B = \{a, b\}$ .  $R = \{(0, a), (0, b), (1, a), (2, b)\}$  is a relation from  $A$  to  $B$ . This Relation can be represented graphically,



**Example:** The directed graph of the relation  $R = \{(1, 1), (1, 3), (2, 1), (2, 3), (2, 4), (3, 1), (3, 2), (4, 1)\}$  on the set  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$  is shown bellow:



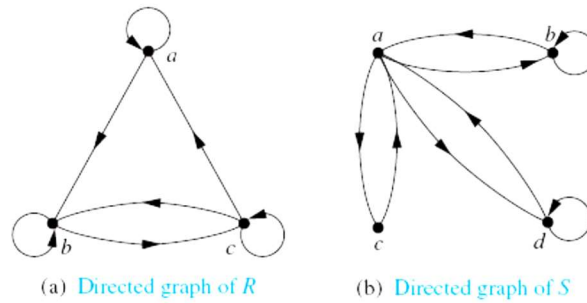
**Example:** What are the ordered pairs in the relation  $R$  represented by the directed graph shown in the bellow figure?



**Solution:** The ordered pairs  $(x, y)$  in the relation are  $R = \{(1, 3), (1, 4), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (3, 1), (3, 3), (4, 1), (4, 3)\}$ . Each of these pairs corresponds to an edge of the directed graph, with  $(2, 2)$  and  $(3, 3)$  corresponding to loops.



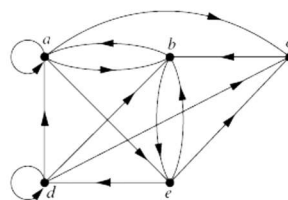
**Example:** Determine whether the relations for the directed graphs shown in bellow Figure are reflexive, symmetric, antisymmetric, and/or transitive.



**Solution:** Because there are loops at every vertex of the directed graph of  $R$ , it is reflexive.  $R$  is neither symmetric nor antisymmetric because there is an edge from  $a$  to  $b$  but not one from  $b$  to  $a$ , but there are edges in both directions connecting  $b$  and  $c$ . Finally,  $R$  is not transitive because there is an edge from  $a$  to  $b$  and an edge from  $b$  to  $c$ , but no edge from  $a$  to  $c$ . Because loops are not present at all the vertices of the directed graph of  $S$ , this relation is not reflexive. It is symmetric but not antisymmetric, because every edge between distinct vertices is accompanied by an edge in the opposite direction. It is also not hard to see from the directed graph that  $S$  is not transitive, because  $(c, a)$  and  $(a, b)$  belong to  $S$ , but  $(c, b)$  does not belong to  $S$ .

**Paths in Directed Graphs:** A *path* from  $a$  to  $b$  in the directed graph  $G$  is a sequence of edges  $(x_0, x_1), (x_1, x_2), (x_2, x_3), \dots, (x_{n-1}, x_n)$  in  $G$ , where  $n$  is a nonnegative integer, and  $x_0 = a$  and  $x_n = b$ , that is, a sequence of edges where the terminal vertex of an edge is the same as the initial vertex in the next edge in the path. This path is denoted by  $x_0, x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-1}, x_n$  and has *length*  $n$ . We view the empty set of edges as a path of length zero from  $a$  to  $a$ . A path of length  $n \geq 1$  that begins and ends at the same vertex is called a *circuit* or *cycle*.

**Example:** Which of the following are paths in the directed graph shown in the bellow figure: (i)  $a, b, e, d$ ; (ii)  $a, e, c, d, b$ ; (iii)  $b, a, c, b, a, a, b$ ; (iv)  $d, c$ ; (v)  $c, b, a$ ; (vi)  $e, b, a, b, a, b, e$ ? What are the lengths of those that are paths? Which of the paths in this list are circuits?



*Solution:* (i) Because each of  $(a, b)$ ,  $(b, e)$ , and  $(e, d)$  is an edge,  $a, b, e, d$  is a path of length three. (ii) Because  $(c, d)$  is not an edge,  $a, e, c, d, b$  is not a path. (iii) Also,  $b, a, c, b, a, a, b$  is a path of length six because  $(b, a)$ ,  $(a, c)$ ,  $(c, b)$ ,  $(b, a)$ ,  $(a, a)$ , and  $(a, b)$  are all edges. (iv) We see that  $d, c$  is a path of length one, because  $(d, c)$  is an edge. (v) Also  $c, b, a$  is a path of length two, because  $(c, b)$  and  $(b, a)$  are edges. (vi) All of  $(e, b)$ ,  $(b, a)$ ,  $(a, b)$ ,  $(b, a)$ ,  $(a, b)$ , and  $(b, e)$  are edges, so  $e, b, a, b, a, b, e$  is a path of length six. The two paths  $b, a, c, b, a, a, b$  and  $e, b, a, b, a, b, e$  are circuits because they begin and end at the same vertex. The paths  $a, b, e, d$ ;  $c, b, a$ ; and  $d, c$  are not circuits.

**Theorem:** Let  $R$  be a relation on a set  $A$ . Then  $(a, b) \in R^n$  if and only if there is a path of length  $n$  from  $a$  to  $b$ , where  $n$  is a positive integer.

**Proof:** We will use mathematical induction. By definition, there is a path from  $a$  to  $b$  of length one if and only if  $(a, b) \in R$ , so the theorem is true when  $n = 1$ . Assume that the theorem is true for the positive integer  $n$ . This is the inductive hypothesis. There is a path of length  $n + 1$  from  $a$  to  $b$  if and only if there is an element  $c \in A$  such that there is a path of length one from  $a$  to  $c$ , so  $(a, c) \in R$ , and a path of length  $n$  from  $c$  to  $b$ , that is,  $(c, b) \in R^n$ . Consequently, by the inductive hypothesis, there is a path of length  $n + 1$  from  $a$  to  $b$  if and only if there is an element  $c$  with  $(a, c) \in R$  and  $(c, b) \in R^n$ . But there is such an element if and only if  $(a, b) \in R^{n+1}$ . Therefore, there is a path of length  $n + 1$  from  $a$  to  $b$  if and only if  $(a, b) \in R^{n+1}$ . This completes the proof.

### Closures of Relations

A computer network has data centers in Boston, Chicago, Denver, Detroit, New York, and San Diego. There are direct, one-way telephone lines from Boston to Chicago, from Boston to Detroit, from Chicago to Detroit, from Detroit to Denver, and from New York to San Diego. Let  $R$  be the relation containing  $(a, b)$  if there is a telephone line from the data center in  $a$  to that in  $b$ . How can we determine if there is some (possibly indirect) link composed of one or more telephone lines from one center to another? Because not all links are direct, such as the link from Boston to Denver that goes through Detroit,  $R$  cannot be used directly to answer this. In the language of relations,  $R$  is not transitive, so it does not contain all the pairs that can be linked. As we will

show, we can find all pairs of data centers that have a link by constructing a transitive relation  $S$  containing  $R$  such that  $S$  is a subset of every transitive relation containing  $R$ . Here,  $S$  is the smallest transitive relation that contains  $R$ . This relation is called the transitive closure of  $R$ . In general, let  $R$  be a relation on a set  $A$  and  $R$  may or may not have some property  $P$ , such as reflexivity, symmetry, or transitivity. If there is a relation  $S$  with property  $P$  containing  $R$  such that  $S$  is a subset of every relation with property  $P$  containing  $R$ , then  $S$  is called the **closure** of  $R$  with respect to  $P$ . (Note that the closure of a relation with respect to a property may not exist.) We will show how reflexive, symmetric, and transitive closures of relations can be found.

The relation  $R = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (2, 1), (3, 2)\}$  on the set  $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$  is not reflexive. How can we produce a reflexive relation containing  $R$  that is as small as possible? This can be done by adding  $(2, 2)$  and  $(3, 3)$  to  $R$ , because these are the only pairs of the form  $(a, a)$  that are not in  $R$ . Clearly, this new relation contains  $R$ . Furthermore, *any* reflexive relation that contains  $R$  must also contain  $(2, 2)$  and  $(3, 3)$ . Because this relation contains  $R$ , is reflexive, and is contained within every reflexive relation that contains  $R$ , it is called the **reflexive closure** of  $R$ .

**Reflexive closure:** Let  $R$  be a relation on a set  $A$  and  $S$  is reflexive closure of  $R$ . Then  $S$  is a reflexive relation containing  $R$  and if  $T$  is a reflexive relation containing  $R$  then,  $S \subseteq T$ . The reflexive closure of  $R$  can be formed by adding all pairs of the form  $(a, a)$  with  $a \in A$  to  $R$ . The addition of these pairs produces a new relation that is reflexive, contains  $R$ , and is contained within any reflexive relation containing  $R$ . We see that the reflexive closure of  $R$  equals  $R \cup \Delta$ , where  $\Delta = \{(a, a) \mid a \in A\}$  the diagonal relation on  $A$ .

**Example:** What is the reflexive closure of the relation  $R = \{(a, b) \mid a < b\}$  on the set of integers?

*Solution:* The reflexive closure of  $R$  is

$$R \cup \Delta = \{(a, b) \mid a < b\} \cup \{(a, a) \mid a \in \mathbf{Z}\} = \{(a, b) \mid a \leq b\}.$$

The relation  $\{(1, 1), (1, 2), (2, 2), (2, 3), (3, 1), (3, 2)\}$  on  $\{1, 2, 3\}$  is not symmetric. How can we produce a symmetric relation that is as small as possible and contains  $R$ ? To do this, we need only add  $(2, 1)$  and  $(1, 3)$ , because these are the only pairs of the form  $(b, a)$  with  $(a, b) \in R$  that are not in  $R$ . This new relation is symmetric and contains  $R$ . Furthermore, *any* symmetric

relation that contains  $R$  must contain this new relation, because a symmetric relation that contains  $R$  must contain  $(2, 1)$  and  $(1, 3)$ . Consequently, this new relation is called the **symmetric closure** of  $R$ .

**Symmetric closure:** Let  $R$  be a relation on a set  $A$  and  $S$  is symmetric closure of  $R$ . Then  $S$  is a symmetric relation containing  $R$  and if  $T$  is a symmetric relation containing  $R$  then,  $S \subseteq T$ . The symmetric closure of a relation  $R$  can be constructed by adding all ordered pairs of the form  $(b, a)$ , where  $(a, b)$  is in the relation, that are not already present in  $R$ . Adding these pairs produces a relation that is symmetric, that contains  $R$ , and that is contained in any symmetric relation that contains  $R$ . The symmetric closure of a relation can be constructed by taking the union of a relation with its inverse that is,  $R \cup R^{-1}$  is the symmetric closure of  $R$ , where  $R^{-1} = \{(b, a) \mid (a, b) \in R\}$ .

**Example:** What is the symmetric closure of the relation  $R = \{(a, b) \mid a > b\}$  on the set of positive integers?

**Solution:** The symmetric closure of  $R$  is the relation

$$R \cup R^{-1} = \{(a, b) \mid a > b\} \cup \{(b, a) \mid a > b\} = \{(a, b) \mid a \neq b\}.$$

This last equality follows because  $R$  contains all ordered pairs of positive integers where the first element is greater than the second element and  $R^{-1}$  contains all ordered pairs of positive integers where the first element is less than the second.

**Transitive closures:** Suppose that a relation  $R$  is not transitive. How can we produce a transitive relation that contains  $R$  such that this new relation is contained within any transitive relation that contains  $R$ ? Can the transitive closure of a relation  $R$  be produced by adding all the pairs of the form  $(a, c)$ , where  $(a, b)$  and  $(b, c)$  are already in the relation?

Consider the relation  $R = \{(1, 3), (1, 4), (2, 1), (3, 2)\}$  on the set  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ . This relation is not transitive because it does not contain  $(3, 1)$  where  $(3, 2)$  and  $(2, 1)$  are in  $R$ . The pairs of this form not in  $R$  are  $(1, 2)$ ,  $(2, 3)$ ,  $(2, 4)$ , and  $(3, 1)$ . Adding these pairs does *not* produce a transitive relation, because the resulting relation contains  $(3, 1)$  and  $(1, 4)$  but does not contain  $(3, 4)$ . This shows that constructing the transitive closure of a relation is more complicated than constructing either the reflexive or symmetric closure.

**Definition:** Let  $R$  be a relation on a set  $A$ . The *connectivity relation*  $R^*$  consists of the pairs  $(a, b)$  such that there is a path of length at least one from  $a$  to  $b$  in  $R$ .

Because  $R^n$  consists of the pairs  $(a, b)$  such that there is a path of length  $n$  from  $a$  to  $b$ , it follows that  $R^*$  is the union of all the sets  $R^n$ . In other words,

$$R^* = \bigcup_{n=1}^{\infty} R^n.$$

**Theorem:** The transitive closure of a relation  $R$  equals the connectivity relation  $R^*$ .

Now that we know that the transitive closure equals the connectivity relation, we turn our attention to the problem of computing this relation. We do not need to examine arbitrarily long paths to determine whether there is a path between two vertices in a finite directed graph. As the following theorem shows, it is sufficient to examine paths containing no more than  $n$  edges, where  $n$  is the number of elements in the set.

**Theorem:** Let  $R$  be a relation on a set  $A$  with  $n$  elements. If there is a path of length at least one in  $R$  from  $a$  to  $b$ , then there is such a path with length not exceeding  $n$ . Moreover, when  $a \neq b$ , if there is a path of length at least one in  $R$  from  $a$  to  $b$ , then there is such a path with length not exceeding  $n - 1$ .

From above theorem, we see that the transitive closure of  $R$  is the union of  $R, R^2, R^3, \dots$ , and  $R^n$ . This follows because there is a path in  $R^*$  between two vertices if and only if there is a path between these vertices in  $R^i$ , for some positive integer  $i$  with  $i \leq n$ . Because

$$R^* = R \cup R^2 \cup R^3 \cup \dots \cup R^n$$

and the zero–one matrix representing a union of relations is the join of the zero–one matrices of these relations, the zero–one matrix for the transitive closure is the join of the zero–one matrices of the first  $n$  powers of the zero–one matrix of  $R$ .

**Theorem:** Let  $M_R$  be the zero–one matrix of the relation  $R$  on a set with  $n$  elements. Then the zero–one matrix of the transitive closure  $R^*$  is

$$M_{R^*} = M_R \vee M_{R^2} \vee M_{R^3} \vee \cdots \vee M_{R^n} = M_R \vee M_R^{[2]} \vee M_R^{[3]} \vee \cdots \vee M_R^{[n]}.$$

**Example:** Find the zero–one matrix of the transitive closure of the relation  $R$  where

$$M_R = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Solution:** The zero–one matrix of the transitive closure  $R^*$  is

$$M_{R^*} = M_R \vee M_R^{[2]} \vee M_R^{[3]}.$$

Because  $M_R^{[2]} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$  and  $M_R^{[3]} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ , it follows that

$$M_{R^*} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \vee \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \vee \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Warshall's Algorithm:** Warshall's algorithm, named after Stephen Warshall, who described it in 1960, is an efficient method for computing the transitive closure of a relation.

**Lemma:** Let  $W_k = [w_{ij}^{[k]}]$  be the zero–one matrix that has a 1 in its  $(i, j)$ th position if and only if there is a path from  $v_i$  to  $v_j$  with interior vertices from the set  $\{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$ . Then

$$w_{ij}^{[k]} = w_{ij}^{[k-1]} \vee (w_{ik}^{[k-1]} \wedge w_{kj}^{[k-1]}),$$

whenever  $i, j$ , and  $k$  are positive integers not exceeding  $n$ .

Warshall's algorithm computes  $M_{R^*}$  by efficiently computing  $W_0 = M_R, W_1, W_2, \dots, W_n = M_{R^*}$ .

**Example:** Let  $A = \{a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5\}$  and  $R$  be a relation on  $A$  given by  $R = \{(a_1, a_1), (a_1, a_2), (a_1, a_4), (a_2, a_3), (a_3, a_3), (a_3, a_5), (a_4, a_4), (a_5, a_2)\}$ . Find the transitive closure of  $R$  using Warshall's algorithm.

**Solution:** The matrix of the relation  $R$

$$M_R = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Step 1.** We set  $W_0 = M_R$ , i.e.,

$$W_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Step 2.** Construct  $W_1$ . First transfer all 1's of  $W_0$  to  $W_1$

$$W_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & & 1 & \\ & & 1 & & \\ & & 1 & & 1 \\ & 1 & & 1 & \end{bmatrix}.$$

In column 1 of  $W_0$ : Nonzero entry at position 1. In row 1 of  $W_0$ : Nonzero entry at positions 1,2 and 4. Thus, at the position (1, 1), (1, 2), and (1, 4) of  $W_1$  make the entries 1. Therefore

$$W_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Step 3.** Construct  $W_2$ . First transfer all 1's of  $W_1$  to  $W_2$

$$W_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & & 1 & \\ & & 1 & & \\ & & 1 & & 1 \\ & 1 & & 1 & \end{bmatrix}.$$

In column 2 of  $W_1$ : Nonzero entry at positions 1 and 5. In row 2 of  $W_1$ : Nonzero entry at position 3. Thus at the position (1, 3), and (5, 3) of  $W_2$  make the entries 1. Therefore

$$W_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

**Step 4.** Construct  $W_3$ .

$$W_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Step 5. Construct  $W_4$ .

$$W_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Step 6. Construct  $W_5$ .

$$W_5 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

From  $W_5$ , we can conclude that the transitive closure of  $R$  is:

$$R^* = \{(a_1, a_1), (a_1, a_2), (a_1, a_3), (a_1, a_4), (a_1, a_5), (a_2, a_2), (a_2, a_3), (a_2, a_5), (a_3, a_2), (a_3, a_3), (a_3, a_5), (a_4, a_4), (a_5, a_2), (a_5, a_3), (a_5, a_5)\}.$$

**Example:** Let  $R = \{(a, c), (b, d), (c, a), (d, b), (e, d)\}$  be a relation on the set  $A = \{a, b, c, d, e, f\}$ . Check whether  $R$  is reflexive, symmetric, antisymmetric or transitive. Find reflexive, symmetric and Transitive closure of  $R$ . Use Warshall's algorithm to find the transitive closure.

**Solution:** Given that  $A = \{a, b, c, d, e, f\}$  and  $R = \{(a, c), (b, d), (c, a), (d, b), (e, d)\}$  is a relation on  $A$ .

- (i)  $R$  is not reflexive as  $(a, a) \notin R$ .
- (ii)  $R$  is not symmetric as  $(e, d) \in R$ , but  $(d, e) \notin R$ .
- (iii)  $R$  is not antisymmetric as  $(a, c) \in R$  and  $(c, a) \in R$  but  $a \neq c$ .
- (iv)  $R$  is not transitive as  $(a, c) \in R$  and  $(c, a) \in R$  but  $(a, a) \notin R$ .
- (v) Reflexive closure of  $R$  is  $R \cup \{(a, a), (b, b), (c, c), (d, d), (e, e), (f, f)\}$   
 $= \{(a, c), (b, d), (c, a), (d, b), (e, d), (a, a), (b, b), (c, c), (d, d), (e, e), (f, f)\}$ .
- (vi) Symmetric closure of  $R$  is  $R \cup R^{-1} = \{(a, c), (b, d), (c, a), (d, b), (e, d), (d, e)\}$

For Transitive closure we use Warshall's algorithm.



The matrix of the relation  $R$

$$M_R = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Step 1. We set  $W_0 = M_R$ , i.e.,

$$W_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Step 2. Construct  $W_1$ . First transfer all 1's of  $W_0$  to  $W_1$

$$W_1 = \begin{bmatrix} & & 1 & & \\ & & & 1 & \\ 1 & & & & \\ & 1 & & & \\ & & & & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

In column 1 of  $W_0$ : Nonzero entry at position 3.

In row 1 of  $W_0$ : Nonzero entry at position 3.

So, at the position (3, 3) of  $W_1$  make the entries 1. Rest are zero. Therefore

$$W_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Step 3. Construct  $W_2$ . First transfer all 1's of  $W_1$  to  $W_2$

In column 2 of  $W_1$ : Nonzero entry at position 4.

In row 2 of  $W_1$ : Nonzero entry at position 4

So, at the position (4,4) of  $W_2$  make the entries 1. Rest are zero. Therefore

$$W_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Similarly

Step 4. Construct  $W_3$ .

$$W_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Step 5. Construct  $W_4$ .

$$W_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Step 6. Construct  $W_5$ .

$$W_5 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

From  $W_5$ , we can conclude that the transitive closure of  $R$  is:

$$\{(a, a), (a, c), (b, b), (b, d), (c, a), (c, c), (d, b), (d, d), (e, b), (e, d)\}.$$

### Equivalence Relations

**Definition:** A relation on a set  $A$  is called an *equivalence relation* if it is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive. Two elements  $a$  and  $b$  that are related by an equivalence relation are called *equivalent*. The notation  $a \sim b$  is often used to denote that  $a$  and  $b$  are equivalent elements with respect to a particular equivalence relation.

**Example:** Let  $R$  be the relation on the set of integers such that  $(a, b) \in R$  if and only if  $a = b$  or  $a = -b$ . Then  $R$  is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive. It follows that  $R$  is an equivalence relation.

**Example:** Let  $R$  be the relation on the set of real numbers such that  $(a, b) \in R$  if and only if  $a - b$  is an integer. Is  $R$  an equivalence relation?

Solution: Because  $a - a = 0$  is an integer for all real numbers  $a$ ,  $(a, a) \in R$  for all real numbers  $a$ . Hence,  $R$  is reflexive. Now suppose that  $(a, b) \in R$ . Then  $a - b$  is an integer, so  $b - a$  is also an integer. Hence,  $(b, a) \in R$ . It follows that  $R$  is symmetric. If  $(a, b) \in R$  and  $(b, a) \in R$ , then

$a - b$  and  $b - c$  are integers. Therefore,  $a - c = (a - b) + (b - c)$  is also an integer. Hence,  $(a, c) \in R$ . Thus,  $R$  is transitive. Consequently,  $R$  is an equivalence relation.

**Example: Congruence Modulo  $m$ .** Let  $m$  be an integer with  $m > 1$ . Show that the relation  $R = \{(a, b) \mid a \equiv b \pmod{m}\}$  is an equivalence relation on the set of integers.

*Solution:* We know that  $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$  if and only if  $m$  divides  $a - b$ . Note that  $a - a = 0$  is divisible by  $m$ , because  $0 = 0 \cdot m$ . Hence,  $a \equiv a \pmod{m}$ , i.e.  $(a, a) \in R$ . So, congruence modulo  $m$  is reflexive. Let  $(a, b) \in R$ . So,  $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$ . Then  $a - b$  is divisible by  $m$ , so  $a - b = km$ , where  $k$  is an integer. It follows that  $b - a = (-k)m$ , so  $b \equiv a \pmod{m}$ . Thus,  $(b, a) \in R$ , and hence, congruence modulo  $m$  is symmetric. Next, suppose  $(a, b), (b, c) \in R$ . That is  $a \equiv b \pmod{m}$  and  $b \equiv c \pmod{m}$ . Then  $m$  divides both  $a - b$  and  $b - c$ . Therefore, there are integers  $k$  and  $l$  with  $a - b = km$  and  $b - c = lm$ . Adding these two equations shows that  $a - c = (a - b) + (b - c) = km + lm = (k + l)m$ . Thus,  $a \equiv c \pmod{m}$ . Thus,  $(a, c) \in R$ . Therefore, congruence modulo  $m$  is transitive. It follows that congruence modulo  $m$  is an equivalence relation.

**Example:** Show that the “divides” relation on the set of positive integers is not an equivalence relation.

**Example:** Let  $R$  be the relation on the set of real numbers such that  $(x, y) \in R$  if and only if  $x$  and  $y$  are real numbers that differ by less than 1, that is  $|x - y| < 1$ . Show that  $R$  is not an equivalence relation.

**Example:** Let  $R$  be a reflexive relation on a set  $A$  such that

$$(a, b) \in R, (a, c) \in R \implies (b, c) \in R.$$

Show that  $R$  is an equivalence relation.

### Equivalence Classes and Partitions

**Equivalence Classes:** Let  $R$  be an equivalence relation on a set  $A$ . The set of all elements that are related to an element  $a$  of  $A$  is called the *equivalence class* of  $a$ . The equivalence class of  $a$  with respect to  $R$  is denoted by  $[a]_R$ . When only one relation is under consideration, we may not use the subscript  $R$  and write  $[a]$  for this equivalence class. In other words, if  $R$  is an equivalence

relation on a set  $A$ , the equivalence class of the element  $a$  is  $[a]_R = \{x \in A \mid (a, x) \in R\}$ . If  $b \in [a]_R$ , then  $b$  is called a **representative** of this equivalence class. Any element of a class can be used as a representative of this class. That is, there is nothing special about the particular element chosen as the representative of the class.

**Example:** What are the equivalence classes of 0 and 1 for congruence modulo 4?

*Solution:* The equivalence class of 0 contains all integers  $a$  such that  $a \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . The integers in this class are those divisible by 4. Hence, the equivalence class of 0 for this relation is

$$[0] = \{\dots, -8, -4, 0, 4, 8, \dots\}.$$

The equivalence class of 1 contains all the integers  $a$  such that  $a \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . The integers in this class are those that have a remainder of 1 when divided by 4. Hence, the equivalence class of 1 for this relation is

$$[1] = \{\dots, -7, -3, 1, 5, 9, \dots\}.$$

**Example:** Suppose that  $R$  is the relation on the set of strings of English letters such that  $a R b$  if and only if  $l(a) = l(b)$ , where  $l(x)$  is the length of the string  $x$ . Is  $R$  an equivalence relation?

**Example:** Let  $n$  be a positive integer and  $S$  a set of strings. Suppose that  $R_n$  is the relation on  $S$  such that  $s R_n t$  if and only if  $s = t$ , or both  $s$  and  $t$  have at least  $n$  characters and the first  $n$  characters of  $s$  and  $t$  are the same. That is, a string of fewer than  $n + 1$  characters is related only to itself; a string  $s$  with at least  $n + 1$  characters is related to a string  $t$  if and only if  $t$  has at least  $n$  characters and  $t$  begins with the  $n$  characters at the start of  $s$ . For example, let  $n = 3$  and let  $S$  be the set of all bit strings. Then  $s R_3 t$  either when  $s = t$  or both  $s$  and  $t$  are bit strings of length 3 or more that begin with the same three bits. For instance,  $01 R_3 01$  and  $00111 R_3 00101$ , but not  $01 R_3 010$ , and  $01011 R_3 01110$ . Then for every set of strings  $S$  and every positive integer  $n$ ,  $R_n$  is an equivalence relation on  $S$ .

**Example:** What is the equivalence class of the string 0111 with respect to the equivalence relation  $R_3$  on the set of all bit strings?

*Solution:* The bit strings equivalent to 0111 are the bit strings with at least three bits that begin with 011. These are the bit strings 011, 0110, 0111, 01100, 01101, 01110, 01111, and so on. Consequently,

$$[011]_{R_3} = \{011, 0110, 0111, 01100, 01101, 01110, 01111, \dots\}.$$

Let  $A$  be the set of students at your school who are majoring in exactly one subject, and let  $R$  be the relation on  $A$  consisting of pairs  $(x, y)$ , where  $x$  and  $y$  are students with the same major. Then  $R$  is an equivalence relation, as the reader should verify. We can see that  $R$  splits all students in  $A$  into a collection of disjoint subsets, where each subset contains students with a specified major. For instance, one subset contains all students majoring (just) in computer science and a second subset contains all students majoring in history. Furthermore, these subsets are equivalence classes of  $R$ . This example illustrates how the equivalence classes of an equivalence relation partition a set into disjoint, nonempty subsets. We will make these notions more precise in the following discussion.

Let  $R$  be a relation on the set  $A$ . The following theorem shows that the equivalence classes of two elements of  $A$  are either identical or disjoint.

**Theorem:** Let  $R$  be an equivalence relation on a set  $A$ . These statements for elements  $a$  and  $b$  of  $A$  are equivalent:

$$(i) (a, b) \in R \quad (ii) [a] = [b] \quad (iii) [a] \cap [b] \neq \emptyset.$$

**Proof:** We first show that (i) implies (ii). Assume that  $(a, b) \in R$ . We will prove that  $[a] = [b]$  by showing  $[a] \subseteq [b]$  and  $[b] \subseteq [a]$ . Suppose  $c \in [a]$ . Then  $(a, c) \in R$ . Because  $(a, b) \in R$  and  $R$  is symmetric,  $(b, a) \in R$ . Furthermore, because  $R$  is transitive and  $(b, a) \in R$  and  $(a, c) \in R$ , it follows that  $(b, c) \in R$ . Hence,  $c \in [b]$ . This shows that  $[a] \subseteq [b]$ . The proof that  $[b] \subseteq [a]$  is similar.

Second, we will show that (ii) implies (iii). Assume that  $[a] = [b]$ . It follows that  $[a] \cap [b] \neq \emptyset$  because  $[a]$  is nonempty (because  $a \in [a]$  because  $R$  is reflexive).

Next, we will show that (iii) implies (i). Suppose that  $[a] \cap [b] \neq \emptyset$ . Then there is an element  $c$  with  $c \in [a]$  and  $c \in [b]$ . In other words,  $(a, c) \in R$  and  $(b, c) \in R$ . By the symmetric property,  $(c, b) \in R$ . Then by transitivity, because  $(a, c) \in R$  and  $(c, b) \in R$ , we have  $(a, b) \in R$ . Because (i) implies (ii), (ii) implies (iii), and (iii) implies (i), the three statements, (i), (ii), and (iii) are equivalent.

**Partition of a set:** A partition of a set  $S$  is a collection of disjoint nonempty subsets of  $S$  that have  $S$  as their union.

**Example:** Suppose that  $S = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ . The collection of sets  $A_1 = \{1, 2, 3\}$ ,  $A_2 = \{4, 5\}$ , and  $A_3 = \{6\}$  forms a partition of  $S$ , because these sets are disjoint and their union is  $S$ .

We are now in a position to show how an equivalence relation gives a partition of a set. Let  $R$  be an equivalence relation on a set  $A$ . The union of the equivalence classes of  $R$  is all of  $A$ , because an element  $a$  of  $A$  is in its own equivalence class, namely,  $[a]_R$ . In other words,

$$\bigcup_{a \in A} [a]_R = A.$$

In addition, these equivalence classes are either equal or disjoint, so  $[a]_R \cap [b]_R = \emptyset$ , when  $[a]_R \neq [b]_R$ . These two observations show that the equivalence classes form a partition of  $A$ , because they split  $A$  into disjoint subsets.

**Theorem:** Let  $R$  be an equivalence relation on a set  $S$ . Then the equivalence classes of  $R$  form a partition of  $S$ . Conversely, given a partition  $\{A_i \mid i \in I\}$  of the set  $S$ , there is an equivalence relation  $R$  that has the sets  $A_i, i \in I$ , as its equivalence classes.

**Example:** List the ordered pairs in the equivalence relation  $R$  produced by the partition  $A_1 = \{1, 2, 3\}$ ,  $A_2 = \{4, 5\}$ , and  $A_3 = \{6\}$  of  $S = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ .

**Solution:** The subsets in the partition are the equivalence classes of  $R$ . The pair  $(a, b) \in R$  if and only if  $a$  and  $b$  are in the same subset of the partition. The pairs  $(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (3, 1), (3, 2),$  and  $(3, 3)$  belong to  $R$  because  $A_1 = \{1, 2, 3\}$  is an equivalence class; the pairs  $(4, 4), (4, 5), (5, 4),$  and  $(5, 5)$  belong to  $R$  because  $A_2 = \{4, 5\}$  is an equivalence class; and

finally the pair  $(6, 6)$  belongs to  $R$  because  $\{6\}$  is an equivalence class. No pair other than those listed belongs to  $R$  and hence

$$R = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), (2, 1), (2, 2), (2, 3), (3, 1), (3, 2), (3, 3), (4, 4), (4, 5), (5, 4), (5, 5), (6, 6)\}.$$

**Example:** What are the sets in the partition of the integers arising from congruence modulo 4?

*Solution:* There are four congruence classes, corresponding to  $[0]_4$ ,  $[1]_4$ ,  $[2]_4$ , and  $[3]_4$ . They are the sets

$$[0]_4 = \{\dots, -8, -4, 0, 4, 8, \dots\},$$

$$[1]_4 = \{\dots, -7, -3, 1, 5, 9, \dots\},$$

$$[2]_4 = \{\dots, -6, -2, 2, 6, 10, \dots\},$$

$$[3]_4 = \{\dots, -5, -1, 3, 7, 11, \dots\}.$$

These congruence classes are disjoint, and every integer is in exactly one of them. In other words, these congruence classes form a partition of set of integers.

**Example:** What are the sets in the partition of the set of all bit strings arising from the relation  $R_3$  on the set of all bit strings? (Recall that  $s R_3 t$ , where  $s$  and  $t$  are bit strings, if  $s = t$  or  $s$  and  $t$  are bit strings with at least three bits that agree in their first three bits.)

*Solution:* Note that every bit string of length less than three is equivalent only to itself. Hence  $[\lambda]_{R_3} = \{\lambda\}$ ,  $[0]_{R_3} = \{0\}$ ,  $[1]_{R_3} = \{1\}$ ,  $[00]_{R_3} = \{00\}$ ,  $[01]_{R_3} = \{01\}$ ,  $[10]_{R_3} = \{10\}$ , and  $[11]_{R_3} = \{11\}$ . Note that every bit string of length three or more is equivalent to one of the eight bit strings 000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110, and 111. We have

$$[000]_{R_3} = \{000, 0000, 0001, 00000, 00001, 00010, 00011, \dots\},$$

$$[001]_{R_3} = \{001, 0010, 0011, 00100, 00101, 00110, 00111, \dots\},$$

$$[010]_{R_3} = \{010, 0100, 0101, 01000, 01001, 01010, 01011, \dots\},$$

$$[011]_{R_3} = \{011, 0110, 0111, 01100, 01101, 01110, 01111, \dots\},$$

$$[100]_{R_3} = \{100, 1000, 1001, 10000, 10001, 10010, 10011, \dots\},$$

$$[101]_{R_3} = \{101, 1010, 1011, 10100, 10101, 10110, 10111, \dots\},$$

$$[110]_{R_3} = \{110, 1100, 1101, 11000, 11001, 11010, 11011, \dots\},$$

$$[111]_{R_3} = \{111, 1110, 1111, 11100, 11101, 11110, 11111, \dots\}.$$

These 8 equivalence classes are disjoint and every bit string is in exactly one of them. So, these equivalence classes partition the set of all bit strings.

## Partial Ordering Relations

We often use relations to order some or all of the elements of sets. For instance, we order words using the relation containing pairs of words  $(x, y)$ , where  $x$  comes before  $y$  in the dictionary. We schedule projects using the relation consisting of pairs  $(x, y)$ , where  $x$  and  $y$  are tasks in a project such that  $x$  must be completed before  $y$  begins. We order the set of integers using the relation containing the pairs  $(x, y)$ , where  $x$  is less than  $y$ . When we add all of the pairs of the form  $(x, x)$  to these relations, we obtain a relation that is reflexive, antisymmetric, and transitive. These are properties that characterize relations used to order the elements of sets.

**Definition:** A relation  $R$  on a set  $A$  is called a *partial ordering* or *partial order* if it is reflexive, antisymmetric, and transitive. A set  $A$  together with a partial ordering  $R$  is called a *partially ordered set*, or *poset*, and is denoted by  $(A, R)$ . Members of  $A$  are called *elements* of the poset.

**Example:** Show that the “greater than or equal” relation  $(\geq)$  is a partial ordering on the set of integers.

**Example:** Show that the inclusion relation  $\subseteq$  is a partial ordering on the power set of a set  $A$ .

**Example:** The divisibility relation is a partial ordering on the set of positive integers.

Customarily, the notation  $a \preceq b$  is used to denote that  $(a, b) \in R$  in an arbitrary poset  $(A, R)$ . This notation is used because the “less than or equal to” relation on the set of real numbers is the most familiar example of a partial ordering and the symbol  $\preceq$  is similar to the  $\leq$  symbol. (Note that the symbol  $\preceq$  is used to denote the relation in *any* poset, not just the “less than or equals” relation.) The notation  $a \prec b$  denotes that  $a \preceq b$ , but  $a \neq b$ . Also, we say “ $a$  is less than  $b$ ” or “ $b$  is greater than  $a$ ” if  $a \prec b$ .

**Definition:** The elements  $a$  and  $b$  of a poset  $(A, \preceq)$  are called *comparable* if either  $a \preceq b$  or  $b \preceq a$ . When  $a$  and  $b$  are elements of  $A$  such that neither  $a \preceq b$  nor  $b \preceq a$ ,  $a$  and  $b$  are called *incomparable*. If every two elements of  $A$  are comparable,  $A$  is called a *totally ordered* or *linearly ordered set*, and  $\preceq$  is called a *total order* or a *linear order*. A totally ordered set is also called a *chain*.



**Example:** The poset  $(\mathbb{Z}, \leq)$  is totally ordered, because  $a \leq b$  or  $b \leq a$  whenever  $a$  and  $b$  are integers.

**Example:** In the poset  $(\mathbb{Z}^+, |)$ , are the integers 3 and 9 comparable? Are 5 and 7 comparable?

*Solution:* The integers 3 and 9 are comparable, because  $3 \mid 9$ . The integers 5 and 7 are incomparable, because  $5 \nmid 7$  and  $7 \nmid 5$ .

**Product Partial order relation:** Let  $(A_1, \leq_1)$  and  $(A_2, \leq_2)$  be two posets. Define a relation  $\leq$  on the set  $A_1 \times A_2$  by  $(a, b) \leq (c, d)$  iff  $a \leq_1 c$  and  $b \leq_2 d$ . Then  $\leq$  is partial order relation and is called Product Partial order relation.

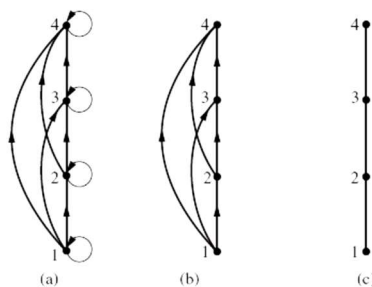
### Lexicographic Order

The words in a dictionary are listed in alphabetic, or lexicographic order, which is based on the ordering of the letters in the alphabet. This is a special case of an ordering of strings on a set constructed from a partial ordering on the set. We will show how this construction works in any poset. First, we will show how to construct a partial ordering on the Cartesian product of two posets,  $(A_1, \leq_1)$  and  $(A_2, \leq_2)$ . The **lexicographic ordering**  $\leq$  on  $A_1 \times A_2$  is defined by specifying that one pair is less than a second pair if the first entry of the first pair is less than ( $\leq_1$ ) the first entry of the second pair, or if the first entries are equal, but the second entry of this pair is less than ( $\leq_2$ ) the second entry of the second pair. In other words,

$$(a_1, a_2) \leq (b_1, b_2), \text{ if either } a_1 <_1 b_1 \text{ or } a_1 = b_1 \text{ and } a_2 \leq_2 b_2.$$

### Hasse Diagrams

Many edges in the directed graph for a finite poset do not have to be shown because they must be present. For instance, consider the directed graph for the partial ordering  $\{(a, b) \mid a \leq b\}$  on the set  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ , shown in bellow Figure (a).



Because this relation is a partial ordering, it is reflexive, and its directed graph has loops at all vertices. Consequently, we do not have to show these loops because they must be present; in Figure (b) loops are not shown. Because a partial ordering is transitive, we do not have to show those edges that must be present because of transitivity. For example, in Figure (c) the edges  $(1, 3)$ ,  $(1, 4)$ , and  $(2, 4)$  are not shown because they must be present. If we assume that all edges are pointed “upward” (as they are drawn in the figure), we do not have to show the directions of the edges; Figure (c) does not show directions. In general, we can represent a finite poset  $(S, \leq)$  using this procedure: Start with the directed graph for this relation. Because a partial ordering is reflexive, a loop  $(a, a)$  is present at every vertex  $a$ . Remove these loops. Next, remove all edges that must be in the partial ordering because of the presence of other edges and transitivity. That is, remove all edges  $(x, y)$  for which there is an element  $z \in S$  such that  $x \leq z$  and  $z \leq y$ . Finally, arrange each edge so that its initial vertex is below its terminal vertex. Remove all the arrows on the directed edges, because all edges point “upward” toward their terminal vertex. These steps are well defined, and only a finite number of steps need to be carried out for a finite poset. When all the steps have been taken, the resulting diagram contains sufficient information to find the partial ordering. The resulting diagram is called the **Hasse diagram** of  $(S, \leq)$ , named after the twentieth-century German mathematician Helmut Hasse who made extensive use of them.

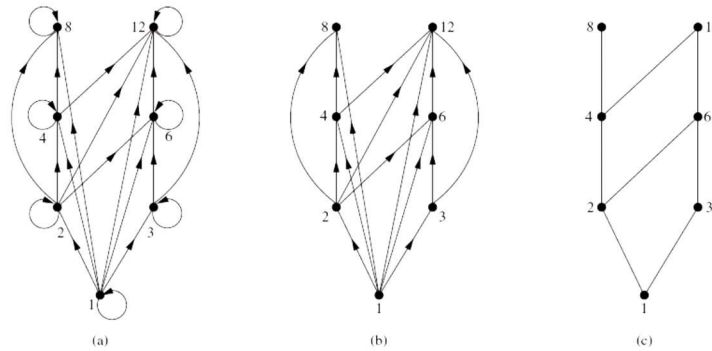
Let  $(S, \leq)$  be a poset. We say that an element  $y \in S$  **covers** an element  $x \in S$  if  $x < y$  and there is no element  $z \in S$  such that  $x < z < y$ . The set of pairs  $(x, y)$  such that  $y$  covers  $x$  is called the **covering relation** of  $(S, \leq)$ . From the description of the Hasse diagram of a poset, we see that the edges in the Hasse diagram of  $(S, \leq)$  are upwardly pointing edges corresponding to the pairs in the covering relation of  $(S, \leq)$ . Furthermore, we can recover a poset from its covering relation, because it is the reflexive transitive closure of its covering relation. This tells us that we can construct a partial ordering from its Hasse diagram.

\*\*\*\*\*

**Example:** Draw the Hasse diagram representing the partial ordering  $\{(a, b) \mid a \text{ divides } b\}$  on  $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 12\}$ .

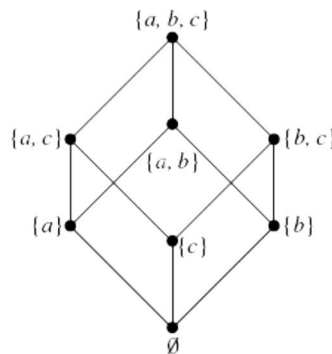
**Solution:** Begin with the digraph for this partial order, as shown in Figure (a). Remove all loops, as shown in Figure (b). Then delete all the edges implied by the transitive property. These are

$(1, 4), (1, 6), (1, 8), (1, 12), (2, 8), (2, 12),$  and  $(3, 12)$ . Arrange all edges to point upward, and delete all arrows to obtain the Hasse diagram. The resulting Hasse diagram is shown below.



**Example:** Draw the Hasse diagram for the partial ordering  $\{(A, B) \mid A \subseteq B\}$  on the power set  $P(S)$  where  $S = \{a, b, c\}$ .

*Solution:* The Hasse diagram for this partial ordering is obtained from the associated digraph by deleting all the loops and all the edges that occur from transitivity, namely  $(\emptyset, \{a, b\}), (\emptyset, \{a, c\}), (\emptyset, \{b, c\}), (\emptyset, \{a, b, c\}), (\{a\}, \{a, b, c\}), (\{b\}, \{a, b, c\}),$  and  $(\{c\}, \{a, b, c\})$ . Finally all edges point upward, and arrows are deleted. The resulting Hasse diagram is illustrated in below Figure.

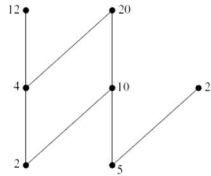


### Maximal and Minimal Elements

Elements of a poset that have certain extremal properties are important for many applications. An element of a poset is called maximal if it is not less than any element of the poset. That is,  $a$  is **maximal** in the poset  $(S, \leq)$  if there is no  $b \in S$  such that  $a < b$ . Similarly, an element of a poset is called minimal if it is not greater than any element of the poset. That is,  $a$  is **minimal** if there is no element  $b \in S$  such that  $b < a$ . Maximal and minimal elements are easy to spot using a Hasse diagram. They are the “top” and “bottom” elements in the diagram.

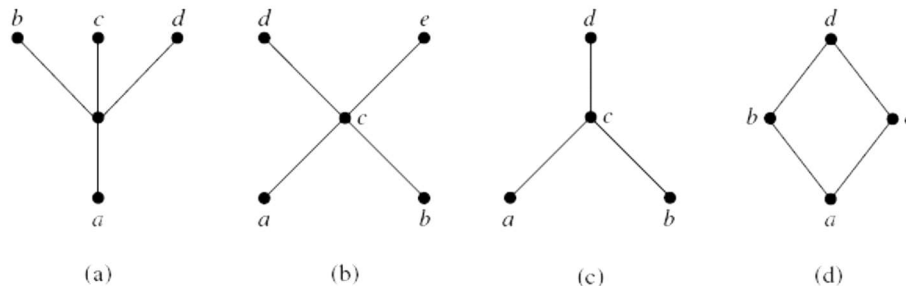
**Example:** Which elements of the poset  $(\{2, 4, 5, 10, 12, 20, 25\}, |)$  are maximal, and which are minimal?

**Solution:** The Hasse diagram in bellow Figure for this poset shows that the maximal elements are 12, 20, and 25, and the minimal elements are 2 and 5. As this example shows, a poset can have more than one maximal element and more than one minimal element.



Sometimes there is an element in a poset that is greater than every other element. Such an element is called the greatest element. That is,  $a$  is the **greatest element** of the poset  $(S, \preceq)$  if  $b \preceq a$  for all  $b \in S$ . The greatest element is unique when it exists. Likewise, an element is called the least element if it is less than all the other elements in the poset. That is,  $a$  is the **least element** of  $(S, \preceq)$  if  $a \preceq b$  for all  $b \in S$ . The least element is unique when it exists.

**Example:** Determine whether the posets represented by each of the Hasse diagrams in bellow figure have a greatest element and a least element.



**Solution:** The least element of the poset with Hasse diagram (a) is  $a$ . This poset has no greatest element. The poset with Hasse diagram (b) has neither a least nor a greatest element. The poset with Hasse diagram (c) has no least element. Its greatest element is  $d$ . The poset with Hasse diagram (d) has least element  $a$  and greatest element  $d$ .

Sometimes it is possible to find an element that is greater than or equal to all the elements in a subset  $A$  of a poset  $(S, \preceq)$ . If  $u$  is an element of  $S$  such that  $a \preceq u$  for all elements  $a \in A$ , then  $u$  is called an **upper bound** of  $A$ . Likewise, there may be an element less than or equal to all the

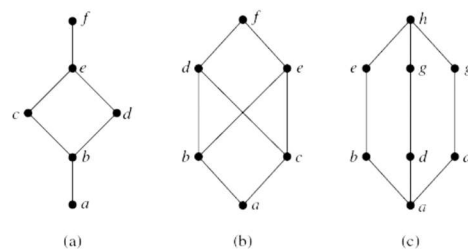
elements in  $A$ . If  $l$  is an element of  $S$  such that  $l \preceq a$  for all elements  $a \in A$ , then  $l$  is called a **lower bound** of  $A$ .

The element  $x$  is called the **least upper bound** of the subset  $A$  if  $x$  is an upper bound that is less than every other upper bound of  $A$ . Because there is only one such element, if it exists, it makes sense to call this element *the* least upper bound. That is,  $x$  is the least upper bound of  $A$  if  $a \preceq x$  whenever  $a \in A$ , and  $x \preceq z$  whenever  $z$  is an upper bound of  $A$ . Similarly, the element  $y$  is called the **greatest lower bound** of  $A$  if  $y$  is a lower bound of  $A$  and  $z \preceq y$  whenever  $z$  is a lower bound of  $A$ . The greatest lower bound of  $A$  is unique if it exists. The greatest lower bound and least upper bound of a subset  $A$  are denoted by  $\text{glb}(A)$  and  $\text{lub}(A)$ , respectively.

### Lattices

A partially ordered set in which every pair of elements has both a least upper bound and a greatest lower bound is called a **lattice**. Lattices have many special properties. Furthermore, lattices are used in many different applications such as models of information flow and play an important role in Boolean algebra.

**Example:** Determine whether the posets represented by each of the Hasse diagrams in bellow figure are lattices.



**Solution:** Posets represented by the Hasse diagrams in (a) and (c) are both lattices because in each poset every pair of elements has both a least upper bound and a greatest lower bound, as the reader should verify. On the other hand, the poset with the Hasse diagram shown in (b) is not a lattice, because the elements  $b$  and  $c$  have no least upper bound. To see this, note that each of the elements  $d, e$ , and  $f$  is an upper bound, but none of these three elements precedes the other two with respect to the ordering of this poset.

**Example:** Is the poset  $(\mathbb{Z}^+, |)$  a lattice?

*Solution:* Let  $a$  and  $b$  be two positive integers. The least upper bound and greatest lower bound of these two integers are the least common multiple and the greatest common divisor of these integers, respectively, as the reader should verify. It follows that this poset is a lattice.

**Example:** Determine whether the posets  $(\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}, |)$  and  $(\{1, 2, 4, 8, 16\}, |)$  are lattices.

*Solution:* Because 2 and 3 have no upper bounds in  $(\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}, |)$ , they certainly do not have a least upper bound. Hence, the first poset is not a lattice. Every two elements of the second poset have both a least upper bound and a greatest lower bound. The least upper bound of two elements in this poset is the larger of the elements and the greatest lower bound of two elements is the smaller of the elements, as the reader should verify. Hence, this second poset is a lattice.

**Example:** Determine whether  $(P(S), \subseteq)$  is a lattice where  $S$  is a set.

*Solution:* Let  $A$  and  $B$  be two subsets of  $S$ . The least upper bound and the greatest lower bound of  $A$  and  $B$  are  $A \cup B$  and  $A \cap B$ , respectively. Hence,  $(P(S), \subseteq)$  is a lattice.

## Functions

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be nonempty sets. A function  $f$  from  $A$  to  $B$  is a relation from  $A$  to  $B$  which relates exactly one element of  $B$  to each element of  $A$ . We write  $f(a) = b$  if  $b$  is the unique element of  $B$  assigned by the function  $f$  to the element  $a$  of  $A$ . If  $f$  is a function from  $A$  to  $B$ , we write  $f: A \rightarrow B$ . Functions are sometimes also called **mappings** or **transformations**. If  $f$  is a function from  $A$  to  $B$ , we say that  $A$  is the domain of  $f$  and  $B$  is the codomain of  $f$ . If  $f(a) = b$ , we say that  $b$  is the image of  $a$  and  $a$  is a preimage of  $b$ . The range, or image of  $f$  is the set of all images of elements of  $A$ . Also, if  $f$  is a function from  $A$  to  $B$ , we say that  $f$  maps  $A$  to  $B$ .

**Example:** Let  $A = \{-1, 2, -3, 4, -5\}$  and  $B = \{1, 2, \dots, 30\}$ . The relation  $f = \{(-1, 2), (2, 5), (-3, 10), (4, 17), (-5, 26)\}$  is a function from  $A$  to  $B$ . We can write this function as

$$f(-1) = 2, f(2) = 5, f(-3) = 10, f(4) = 17, f(-5) = 26.$$

A function is called **real-valued** if its codomain is the set of real numbers, and it is called **integer-valued** if its codomain is the set of integers. Two real-valued functions or two integer-valued functions with the same domain can be added, as well as multiplied. Let,  $f$  and  $g$  be functions

from a set  $A$  to real numbers  $\mathbb{R}$ . Then  $f + g$  and  $fg$  are also functions from  $A$  to  $\mathbb{R}$  defined for all  $x \in A$  by

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x) \text{ and } (fg)(x) = f(x)g(x).$$

**Example:** Let  $f$  and  $g$  be functions from  $\mathbb{R}$  to  $\mathbb{R}$  such that  $f(x) = x^2$  and  $g(x) = x - x^2$ .

What are the functions  $f + g$  and  $fg$ ?

*Solution:* From the definition of the sum and product of functions, it follows that

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x) = x^2 + (x - x^2) = x.$$

And

$$(fg)(x) = f(x)g(x) = x^2(x - x^2) = x^3 - x^4.$$

**One-to-One Functions:** A function  $f$  is said to be one-to-one, or an injection, if and only if  $f(a) = f(b)$  implies that  $a = b$  for all  $a$  and  $b$  in the domain of  $f$ . A function is said to be injective if it is one-to-one. Note that a function  $f$  is one-to-one if and only if  $f(a) \neq f(b)$  whenever  $a \neq b$ . This way of expressing that  $f$  is one-to-one is obtained by taking the contrapositive of the implication in the definition.

**Example:** The function  $f$  from  $\{a, b, c, d\}$  to  $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$  with  $f(a) = 4, f(b) = 5, f(c) = 1$ , and  $f(d) = 3$  is one-to-one.

**Example:** the function  $f(x) = x^2$  from the set of integers to the set of integers is not one-to-one because, for instance,  $f(1) = f(-1) = 1$ , but  $1 \neq -1$ .

**Example:** Determine whether the function  $f(x) = x + 1$  from the set of real numbers to itself is one-to-one.

*Solution:* Suppose that  $x$  and  $y$  are real numbers with  $f(x) = f(y)$ , so that  $x + 1 = y + 1$ . This means that  $x = y$ . Hence,  $f(x) = x + 1$  is a one-to-one function from  $\mathbb{R}$  to  $\mathbb{R}$ .

**Onto Functions:** A function  $f$  from  $A$  to  $B$  is called *onto*, or a *surjection*, if and only if for every element  $b \in B$  there is an element  $a \in A$  with  $f(a) = b$ . A function  $f$  is called *surjective* if it is onto.

**Example:** The function  $f$  from  $\{a, b, c, d\}$  to  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$  with  $f(a) = 4, f(b) = 2, f(c) = 1,$  and  $f(d) = 3$  is onto.

**Example:** Is the function  $f(x) = x^2$  from the set of integers to the set of integers onto?

*Solution:* The function  $f$  is not onto because there is no integer  $x$  with  $x^2 = -1$ , for instance.

**Bijection:** The function  $f$  is a **bijection**, if it is both one-to-one and onto. We also say that such a function is bijective.

**Example:** The function  $f$  from  $\{a, b, c, d\}$  to  $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$  with  $f(a) = 4, f(b) = 2, f(c) = 1,$  and  $f(d) = 3$  is bijective.

Now consider a one-to-one correspondence  $f$  from the set  $A$  to the set  $B$ . Because  $f$  is an onto function, every element of  $B$  is the image of some element in  $A$ . Furthermore, because  $f$  is also a one-to-one function, every element of  $B$  is the image of a *unique* element of  $A$ . Consequently, we can define a new function from  $B$  to  $A$  that reverses the correspondence given by  $f$ .

**Inverse Function:** Let  $f$  be a one-to-one correspondence from the set  $A$  to the set  $B$ . The *inverse function* of  $f$  is the function that assigns to an element  $b$  belonging to  $B$  the unique element  $a$  in  $A$  such that  $f(a) = b$ . The inverse function of  $f$  is denoted by  $f^{-1}$ . Hence,  $f^{-1}(b) = a$  when  $f(a) = b$ .

A one-to-one correspondence is called **invertible** because we can define an inverse of this function. A function is **not invertible** if it is not a one-to-one correspondence, because the inverse of such a function does not exist.

**Example:** Let  $f$  be the function from  $\{a, b, c\}$  to  $\{1, 2, 3\}$  such that  $f(a) = 2, f(b) = 3,$  and  $f(c) = 1$ . Is  $f$  invertible, and if it is, what is its inverse?

*Solution:* The function  $f$  is invertible because it is a one-to-one correspondence. The inverse function  $f^{-1}$  reverses the correspondence given by  $f$ , so  $f^{-1}(1) = c, f^{-1}(2) = a,$  and  $f^{-1}(3) = b$ .



**Example:** Let  $f : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  be such that  $f(x) = x + 1$ . Is  $f$  invertible, and if it is, what is its inverse?

*Solution:* The function  $f$  has an inverse because it is a one-to-one correspondence. To reverse the correspondence, suppose that  $y$  is the image of  $x$ , so that  $y = x + 1$ . Then  $x = y - 1$ . This means that  $y - 1$  is the unique element of  $\mathbb{Z}$  that is sent to  $y$  by  $f$ . Consequently,  $f^{-1}(y) = y - 1$ .

**Example:** Let  $f$  be the function from  $\mathbb{R}$  to  $\mathbb{R}$  with  $f(x) = x^2$ . Is  $f$  invertible?

*Solution:* Because  $f(-2) = f(2) = 4$ ,  $f$  is not one-to-one. If an inverse function were defined, it would have to assign two elements to 4. Hence,  $f$  is not invertible

**Compositions of Functions:** Let  $g$  be a function from the set  $A$  to the set  $B$  and let  $f$  be a function from the set  $B$  to the set  $C$ . The *composition* of the functions  $f$  and  $g$ , denoted for all  $a \in A$  by  $f \circ g$ , is the function from  $A$  to  $C$  defined by

$$(f \circ g)(a) = f(g(a)).$$

**Example:** Let  $g$  be the function from the set  $\{a, b, c\}$  to itself such that  $g(a) = b, g(b) = c, g(c) = a$ . Let  $f$  be the function from the set  $\{a, b, c\}$  to the set  $\{1, 2, 3\}$  such that  $f(a) = 3, f(b) = 2, f(c) = 1$ . What is the composition of  $f$  and  $g$ , and what is the composition of  $g$  and  $f$ ?

*Solution:* The composition  $f \circ g$  is defined by  $(f \circ g)(a) = f(g(a)) = f(b) = 2, (f \circ g)(b) = f(g(b)) = f(c) = 1, (f \circ g)(c) = f(g(c)) = f(a) = 3$ . Note that  $g \circ f$  is not defined, because the range of  $f$  is not a subset of the domain of  $g$ .

**Example:** Let  $f$  and  $g$  be the functions from the set of integers to the set of integers defined by  $f(x) = 2x + 3$  and  $g(x) = 3x + 2$ . What is the composition of  $f$  and  $g$ ? What is the composition of  $g$  and  $f$ ?

*Solution:* Both the compositions  $f \circ g$  and  $g \circ f$  are defined. Moreover,

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) = f(3x + 2) = 2(3x + 2) + 3 = 6x + 7$$

and

$$(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x)) = g(2x + 3) = 3(2x + 3) + 2 = 6x + 11.$$

Note that even though  $f \circ g$  and  $g \circ f$  are defined for some functions  $f$  and  $g$ , they are not equal. In other words, the commutative law does not hold for the composition of functions.

### Some Important Functions

The **floor function** assigns to the real number  $x$  the largest integer that is less than or equal to  $x$ . The value of the floor function at  $x$  is denoted by  $\lfloor x \rfloor$ . The **ceiling function** assigns to the real number  $x$  the smallest integer that is greater than or equal to  $x$ . The value of the ceiling function at  $x$  is denoted by  $\lceil x \rceil$ . The floor function is often also called the **greatest integer function**. It is often denoted by  $[x]$ . These are some values of the floor and ceiling functions:

$$\left\lfloor \frac{1}{2} \right\rfloor = 0, \left\lfloor \frac{1}{2} \right\rfloor = 1, \left\lfloor -\frac{1}{2} \right\rfloor = -1, \left\lceil -\frac{1}{2} \right\rceil = 0, \lfloor 3.1 \rfloor = 3, \lceil 3.1 \rceil = 4, \lfloor 7 \rfloor = 7, \lceil 7 \rceil = 7.$$

**Example:** Data stored on a computer disk or transmitted over a data network are usually represented as a string of bytes. Each byte is made up of 8 bits. How many bytes are required to encode 100 bits of data?

*Solution:* To determine the number of bytes needed, we determine the smallest integer that is at least as large as the quotient when 100 is divided by 8, the number of bits in a byte. Consequently,

$$\left\lceil \frac{100}{8} \right\rceil = \lceil 12.5 \rceil = 13 \text{ bytes are required.}$$

The **factorial function**  $f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ , denoted by  $f(n) = n!$ . The value of  $f(n) = n!$  is the product of the first  $n$  positive integers, so  $f(n) = 1 \cdot 2 \cdots (n-1) \cdot n$  and  $f(0) = 0! = 1$ . We have  $f(1) = 1! = 1, f(2) = 2! = 1 \cdot 2 = 2, f(6) = 6! = 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 4 \cdot 5 \cdot 6 = 720$ .

A **permutation** is a bijective function on a finite set. There are  $n!$  permutations on a set of  $n$  elements.

**Example:** Let  $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$  and  $f$  is function on  $A$  given by  $f(1) = 2, f(2) = 1, f(3) = 3$ . The function  $f$  is one to one and onto function and hence is a permutation on the set  $A$ . The function

$f$  can also be written as  $f = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ . The other permutations on the set  $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$  are

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

**Note:** Composition of permutations is also known as product of permutations.

A **sequence** is a function from the set of positive integers to a set  $S$ . We use the notation  $a_n$  to denote the image of the integer  $n$ . We call  $a_n$  a term of the sequence. We use the notation  $\{a_n\}$  to describe the sequence.

**Example:** Consider the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ , where  $a_n = \frac{1}{n}$ ;  $n \geq 1$ . The function is given by  $f(n) = \frac{1}{n}$ . The list of the terms of this sequence are  $a_1 = f(1), a_2 = f(2), a_3 = f(3), \dots$ . Therefore  $a_1 = 1, a_2 = \frac{1}{2}, a_3 = \frac{1}{3}, a_4 = \frac{1}{4}, \dots$ .

**Note:** In most mathematical applications we need the sequence to start from  $a_0$  instead of  $a_1$ .

### Unit III--Recurrence Relation and their solutions

Consider the numeric sequence  $\{a_n\}$  given as  $3, 5, 7, 9 \dots$ . We can find a formula for the  $n^{\text{th}}$  term of the sequence i.e. discrete numeric function by observing the pattern of the sequence

$$a_1 = 3 = 2 \times 1 + 1.$$

$$a_2 = 5 = 2 \times 2 + 1.$$

$$a_3 = 7 = 2 \times 3 + 1.$$

Thus, for the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ ,  $n^{\text{th}}$  term of the sequence is  $a_n = 2n + 1$  for  $n \geq 1$ . This type of formula is called **explicit formula** or discrete numeric function for the sequence, because we can find any term of the sequence directly from the above derived formula. For example,  $a_{100} = 2 \times 100 + 1 = 201$ .

Let us take another example of a sequence defined as

$$1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, \dots$$

For this sequence, the explicit formula is not obvious. If we observe closely however, we find that pattern of the sequence is such that any term after the second term is the sum of the preceding two terms. That is,

$$3^{\text{rd}} \text{ term} = 1^{\text{st}} \text{ term} + 2^{\text{nd}} \text{ term.}$$

$$4^{\text{th}} \text{ term} = 2^{\text{nd}} \text{ term} + 3^{\text{rd}} \text{ term.}$$

$$5^{\text{th}} \text{ term} = 3^{\text{rd}} \text{ term} + 4^{\text{th}} \text{ term.}$$

Here, the  $n^{\text{th}}$  term of the sequence sequence can be expressed in the form of an equation

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2}; n \geq 3, \text{ where, } a_1 = 1, a_2 = 1.$$

### Recurrence Relation

A recurrence relation for the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is an equation that express  $a_n$  in terms one or more of the previous terms  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{n-1}$  for all integers  $n$  with  $n \geq k$ , where  $k$  is a non negative integer. A sequence is called a solution of a recurrence relation if its terms satisfy the recurrence relation. The initial conditions for the recurrence relation are a set of values that explicitly define some of the members  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{k-1}$ . We say that we have solved the recurrence relation together with the initial conditions when we find an explicit formula, called a **closed formula**, for the terms of the sequence.

**Example:** The equation

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2}, n \geq 2 \text{ with } a_0 = 0, a_1 = 1$$

relates  $a_n$  to  $a_{n-1}$  and  $a_{n-2}$ . Here  $k = 2$ . So, this is a recurrence relation with initial conditions. The sequence defined by this recurrence relation is known as the **Fibonacci sequence**, after the Italian mathematician Fibonacci.

**Example:** Let  $\{a_n\}$  be a sequence that satisfies the recurrence relation  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 3$  for  $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ , and suppose that  $a_0 = 2$ . What are  $a_1, a_2$ , and  $a_3$  ?

*Solution:* We see from the recurrence relation that  $a_1 = a_0 + 3 = 2 + 3 = 5$ . It then follows that  $a_2 = a_1 + 3 = 5 + 3 = 8$  and  $a_3 = a_2 + 3 = 8 + 3 = 11$ .

**Example:** Determine whether the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ , where  $a_n = 3n$  for every nonnegative integer  $n$ , is a solution of the recurrence relation  $a_n = 2a_{n-1} - a_{n-2}$  for  $n = 2, 3, 4, \dots$ . Answer the same question where  $a_n = 2^n$  and where  $a_n = 5$ .

*Solution:* Suppose that  $a_n = 3n$  for every nonnegative integer  $n$ . Then, for  $n \geq 2$ , we see that  $2a_{n-1} - a_{n-2} = 2 \times 3 \times (n - 1) - 3 \times (n - 2) = 3n = a_n$ . Therefore,  $\{a_n\}$ , where  $a_n = 3n$ , is a solution of the recurrence relation.

Suppose that  $a_n = 2^n$  for every nonnegative integer  $n$ . Note that  $a_0 = 1, a_1 = 2$ , and  $a_2 = 4$ . Because  $2a_1 - a_0 = 2 \times 2 - 1 = 3 \neq a_2$ , we see that  $\{a_n\}$ , where  $a_n = 2^n$ , is not a solution of the recurrence relation.

Suppose that  $a_n = 5$  for every nonnegative integer  $n$ . Then for  $n \geq 2$ , we see that  $a_n = 2a_{n-1} - a_{n-2} = 2 \times 5 - 5 = 5 = a_n$ . Therefore,  $\{a_n\}$ , where  $a_n = 5$ , is a solution of the recurrence relation.

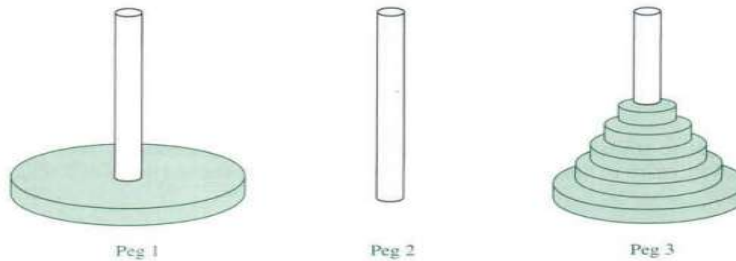
**Example:** Show that

- (i) For the Recurrence Relation  $a_n = 2a_{n-1}, n \geq 1, a_n = 2^n$  is the solution.
- (ii) For the Recurrence Relation  $a_n - 7a_{n-1} + 10a_{n-2} = 0, n \geq 2, a_n = c_1 2^n + c_2 5^n$  is a solution, where  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  arbitrary constants.

### Application of Recurrence Relation

Recurrence relations can be used to study and to solve counting problems. To start with, let us demonstrate the **Tower of Hanoi** puzzle.

**Tower of Hanoi:** In the nineteenth century, a game called the Tower of Hanoi became popular in Europe. This game represents work that is under way in the temple of Brahma. There are three pegs, with one peg containing 64 golden disks. Each golden disk is slightly smaller than the disk below it. The task is to move all 64 disks from the first peg to the third peg.



The rules for moving the disks are as follows:

1. Only one disk can be moved at a time.
2. The removed disk must be placed on one of the pegs.
3. A larger disk cannot be placed on top of a smaller disk.

The objective is to determine the minimum number of moves required to transfer the disks from the first peg to the third peg. Let peg 1 contains  $n \geq 1$  disks. The move of the disks from peg 1 to peg 3 can be described as follows.

1. Move the top  $n - 1$  disks from peg 1 to peg 2 using peg 3 as an intermediate peg.
2. Move the largest disk ( $n^{\text{th}}$  number) from peg 1 to peg 3.
3. Move the  $n - 1$  disks from peg 2 to peg 3 using peg 1 as the intermediate peg.

The problem can be formulated as a Recurrence Relation for the sequence  $\{H_n\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$  as follows. Let  $H_n$  be the number of moves required to move  $n$  disks,  $n \geq 1$ , from one peg to another peg. Step 1 requires us to move  $n - 1$  disks from peg 1 to peg 2, which requires  $H_{n-1}$  moves. Step 2 requires to move the  $n^{\text{th}}$  disk from peg 1 to peg 3, which requires one move. Step 3 requires us to move  $n - 1$  disks from peg 2 to peg 3, which requires  $H_{n-1}$  moves. Thus, it follows that

$$H_n = H_{n-1} + 1 + H_{n-1} = 2H_{n-1} + 1, \text{ if } n \geq 2$$

The initial condition is  $H_1 = 1$ , because one disk can be transferred from peg 1 to peg 3, according to the rules of the puzzle, in one move.

Many methods have been developed for solving recurrence relations. Here, we will introduce a straightforward method known as **iteration** or **substitution** as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} H_n &= 2H_{n-1} + 1 \\ &= 2(2H_{n-2} + 1) + 1 \\ &= 2^2H_{n-2} + 2 + 1 \\ &= 2^2(2H_{n-3} + 1) + 2 + 1 \\ &= 2^3H_{n-3} + 2^2 + 2 + 1 \\ &\vdots \\ &= 2^{n-1}H_1 + 2^{n-2} + 2^{n-3} + \dots + 2 + 1 \\ &= 2^{n-1} + 2^{n-2} + \dots + 2 + 1 \\ &= 2^n - 1. \end{aligned}$$

From this explicit formula, the monk requires  $2^{64} - 1 = 18,446,744,073,709,551,615$  moves to transfer the disks. Making one move per second, it will take them more than 500 billion years to complete the transfer.

**Example:** Find the Recurrence Relation and the initial condition for the sequence

$$1, 5, 17, 53, 161, 484, \dots$$

**Solution:** Finding the Recurrence Relation would be easier if we had some context for problem (like Tower of Hanoi). The Recurrence Relation tells us how to get from previous terms to future terms. What is going on here? We could look at the differences between the terms of the sequences, that are: 4, 12, 36, 108, ... . Notice that these are growing by a factor of 3. Now the terms  $a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3 \dots$  can be written as:

$$a_0 = 1$$

$$a_1 = 5 = 1 \times 3 + 2$$

$$a_2 = 17 = 5 \times 3 + 2$$

$$a_3 = 53 = 17 \times 3 + 2$$

So, observing the pattern the  $n^{\text{th}}$  term of the sequence can be written as  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + 2$ , with  $a_0 = 1$ , which is the required Recurrence Relation.

**Example:** Find a Recurrence Relation with initial conditions for the number of bit strings of length  $n$  that do not have two consecutive 0s. How many such strings are there of length five?

Solution: Let  $a_n$  be the number of bit strings of length  $n$  that do not have two consecutive 0s. Then,  $a_1 = 2$ , because both bit strings of length one, 0 and 1, do not have two consecutive 0s. Also  $a_2 = 3$ , because the valid bit strings of length two that do not have two consecutive 0s are 01, 10 and 11.

To obtain a recurrence relation for  $\{a_n\}$ , we need to consider the bit strings of length  $n$  that do not have consecutive 0s equals the number of such strings ending with a 0 plus the number of such bit strings ending with a 1. We will assume that  $n \geq 3$ , so that the bit string has at least three bits. The bit strings of length  $n$  ending with 1 that do not have two consecutive 0s are precisely the bit strings of length  $n - 1$  with no consecutive 0s with a 1 added at the end. Consequently, there are  $a_{n-1}$  such bit strings. Bit strings of length  $n$  ending with a 0 that do not have two consecutive 0s must have 1 as their  $(n - 1)^{\text{th}}$  bit; otherwise they would end with pair of 0s. It follows that bit strings of length  $n$  ending with 0 that have no two consecutive 0s are precisely the bit strings of length  $n - 2$  with no two consecutive 0s with 10 at the end. Consequently, there are  $a_{n-2}$  such bit strings. Thus, we conclude that recurrence relation can be defined as

$$a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2}; \text{ for } n \geq 3.$$

The initial conditions are  $a_1 = 2$ , and  $a_2 = 3$ .

Finally, to find the number of bit strings of length 5 that do not have two consecutive 0s we have to find  $a_5$ . Using the above recurrence relation, we have,

$$a_3 = a_2 + a_1 = 5$$

$$a_4 = a_3 + a_2 = 8$$

$$a_5 = a_4 + a_3 = 13$$

Therefore, the number of bit strings of length 5 that do not have two consecutive 0s 13.

## Linear Recurrence Relation

A Recurrence Relation of the form

$$c_0(n)a_n + c_1(n)a_{n-1} + \cdots + c_k(n)a_{n-k} = f(n), n \geq k$$

where,  $c_0(n), c_1(n), \dots, c_k(n)$  and  $f(n)$  are functions of  $n$ , is called a linear recurrence relation.

**Note 1:** If  $c_0(n), c_k(n)$  are not identically equal to zero, then the recurrence relation is said to be **recurrence relation of order  $k$** . In other words, a recurrence relation is said to be of order  $k$  if  $a_n$  is expressed as function of  $a_{n-1}, a_{n-2}, \dots, a_{n-k}$  that appears in the relation.

**Note 2:** If  $c_0(n), c_1(n), \dots, c_k(n)$  are constants, then the Recurrence Relation is known as **Linear Recurrence Relation with constant coefficients**.

**Note 3:** If  $f(n) = 0$ , then the Recurrence Relation is said to be **Homogenous**; otherwise, it is **Non-homogenous**.

**Example:** Consider the following recurrence relation:

- (i)  $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2}, n \geq 2$
- (ii)  $a_n = n + a_{n-1}, n \geq 1$
- (iii)  $a_n - 3a_{n-1} + 2a_{n-2} = 0, n \geq 2$
- (iv)  $a_n - 3a_{n-1} + 2a_{n-2} = n^2 - 1, n \geq 2$
- (v)  $a_n - (n-1)a_{n-1} - (n-2)a_{n-2} = 0, n \geq 2$
- (vi)  $a_n - 9a_{n-1} + 26a_{n-2} - 24a_{n-3} = 4^n, n \geq 3$
- (vii)  $a_n - 3a_{n-1}^2 + 2a_{n-2} = n^2, n \geq 2$
- (viii)  $a_n = a_0a_{n-1} + a_1a_{n-2} + \cdots + a_{n-1}a_0, n \geq 1$
- (ix)  $a_n^2 + a_{n-1}^2 = -1, n \geq 1$
- (x)  $a_n = 3a_{n-1}, n \geq 1$

Clearly, All the above examples are linear recurrence relations except (vii), (viii) and (ix); the relation (vii) is not linear because of the squared term  $a_{n-1}^2$ . The relations (i), (ii), (iii), (iv), (vi), and (x) are linear with constant coefficients. Relations (ii) and (x) have order 1; (iii), (iv) and (v) have order 2; and (vi) has order 3. Relations (i), (iii), (v) and (x) are homogenous.

## Solving Linear Recurrence Relation with constant coefficients



A wide variety of recurrence relations occur in models. Some of these recurrence relations can be solved using iteration or some other ad hoc technique. It is not possible to solve all Recurrence Relations. Also, there is no general technique to solve all Recurrence Relation. However, one important class of recurrence relations can be explicitly solved in a systematic way. These are recurrence relations that express the terms of a sequence as linear combinations of previous terms, i.e. linear Recurrence Relations with constant coefficients. Nonlinear Recurrence Relations can be solved by converting them into linear Recurrence Relations.

We are going to discuss two methods of solving Linear Recurrence Relation with constant coefficients. They are

- (i) By Characteristic roots.
- (ii) By Generating function method.

### Solving of Linear Homogenous Recurrence Relations with constant coefficients

Recurrence relations may be difficult to solve, but fortunately this is not the case for linear homogenous recurrence relations with constant coefficients. We already said that a recurrence relation of the form

$$a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2} + \cdots + c_k a_{n-k}$$

where,  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$ , are real numbers and  $c_k \neq 0$  is called a **linear homogenous Recurrence Relation of order  $k$**  with constant coefficients.

The above recurrence relation is linear since each  $a_i$  has power 1 and no terms of the type  $a_i a_j$  occurred. The order of the Recurrence Relation is  $k$ , since  $a_n$  is expressed in terms of the previous  $k$  terms of the sequence i.e., order is the difference between the greatest and lowest subscripts of the members of the sequence occurring in the Recurrence Relation. The coefficients of the terms of the expression are all constants, not functions of  $n$ . The recurrence relation is **homogeneous** because no terms occur that are not multiples of the  $a_j$ s.

**Solution of Recurrence Relation by Characteristic Polynomial:** We can use two key ideas to find all their solutions. First, these recurrence relations have solutions of the form  $a_n = r^n$ , where

$r$  is a constant. The other key observation is that a linear combination of two solutions of a linear homogeneous recurrence relation is also a solution.

**Note:** This method of solving linear homogeneous recurrence relation is similar to solving linear homogeneous differential equation.

Let  $a_n = r^n$ ;  $r \neq 0$ , be a solution of the recurrence relation

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2} + \dots + c_k a_{n-k} \\ \Rightarrow r^n &= c_1 r^{n-1} + c_2 r^{n-2} + \dots + c_k r^{n-k} \\ \Rightarrow r^n - c_1 r^{n-1} - c_2 r^{n-2} - \dots - c_k r^{n-k} &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow r^{n-k} (r^k - c_1 r^{k-1} - c_2 r^{k-2} - \dots - c_k) &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow r^k - c_1 r^{k-1} - c_2 r^{k-2} - \dots - c_k &= 0, \text{ since } r^{n-k} \neq 0 \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  with  $a_n = r^n$  where  $r \neq 0$  is a solution if and only if  $r$  is a solution of the last equation. We call this the **characteristic equation** of the recurrence relation.

That is, the characteristic equation of the recurrence relation is

$$r^k - c_1 r^{k-1} - c_2 r^{k-2} - \dots - c_{k-1} r - c_k = 0$$

The solutions of the characteristic equation are called the **characteristic roots** of the recurrence relation. We will now state the general result about the solution of linear homogeneous recurrence relations with constant coefficients, under the assumption that the characteristic equation has distinct roots.

**Theorem:** Let  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  be real numbers. Suppose that the characteristic equation

$$r^k - c_1 r^{k-1} - c_2 r^{k-2} - \dots - c_{k-1} r - c_k = 0$$

has  $k$  distinct roots  $r_1, r_2, \dots, r_k$ , then a sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is a solution of the recurrence relation

$$a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2} + \dots + c_k a_{n-k}$$

if and only if

$$a_n = \alpha_1 r_1^n + \alpha_2 r_2^n + \dots + \alpha_k r_k^n$$

for  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , where  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k$  are constants.

**Example:** Find the solution of the recurrence relation

$$a_n = 6a_{n-1} - 11a_{n-2} + 6a_{n-3}$$

with initial conditions  $a_0 = 2, a_1 = 5, a_2 = 15$ .

**Solution:** The characteristic polynomial of this recurrence relation is

$$r^3 - 6r^2 + 11r - 6.$$

The characteristic roots are  $r = 1, r = 2, r = 3$  and they are distinct.

Thus, the solution is of the form

$$a_n = \alpha_1 \cdot 1^n + \alpha_2 \cdot 2^n + \alpha_3 \cdot 3^n.$$

To find the constants  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2$  and  $\alpha_3$ , we use the given initial conditions. This gives

$$a_0 = 2 = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3,$$

$$a_1 = 5 = \alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + 3\alpha_3$$

$$a_2 = 15 = \alpha_1 + 4\alpha_2 + 9\alpha_3$$

After solving three equations, the values of the constants are as follows.

$$\alpha_1 = 1, \alpha_2 = -1, \alpha_3 = 2.$$

Then

$$a_n = 1 - 2^n + 2 \times 3^n.$$

Hence, the unique solution to this recurrence relation and the given initial conditions is the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  with  $a_n = 1 - 2^n + 2 \times 3^n$ .

We now state the most general result about linear homogeneous recurrence relations with constant coefficients, allowing the characteristic equation to have multiple roots. The key point is that for each root  $r$  of the characteristic equation, the general solution is of the form  $P(n) r^n$ , where  $P(n)$  is a polynomial of degree  $m - 1$ , with  $m$  the multiplicity of this root  $r$ .

**Theorem:** Let  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  be real numbers. Suppose that the characteristic equation

$$r^k - c_1 r^{k-1} - c_2 r^{k-2} - \dots - c_{k-1} r - c_k = 0$$

has  $t$  distinct roots  $r_1, r_2, \dots, r_t$  with multiplicities  $m_1, m_2, \dots, m_t$ , respectively, so that  $m_i \geq 1$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, t$  and  $m_1 + m_2 + \dots + m_t = k$ . Then a sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is a solution of the recurrence relation

$$a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2} + \dots + c_k a_{n-k}$$

if and only if

$$a_n = (\alpha_{1,0} + \alpha_{1,1}n + \dots + \alpha_{1,m_1-1}n^{m_1-1})r_1^n + (\alpha_{2,0} + \alpha_{2,1}n + \dots + \alpha_{2,m_2-1}n^{m_2-1})r_2^n + \dots + (\alpha_{t,0} + \alpha_{t,1}n + \dots + \alpha_{t,m_t-1}n^{m_t-1})r_t^n$$

for  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , where  $\alpha_{i,j}$  are constants for  $1 \leq i \leq t$  and  $0 \leq j \leq m_i - 1$ .

**Example:** Find the solution of the recurrence relation

$$a_n = -3a_{n-1} - 3a_{n-2} - a_{n-3},$$

with initial conditions  $a_0 = 1, a_1 = -2$  and  $a_2 = -1$ .

**Solution:** The characteristic polynomial of this recurrence relation is

$$r^3 + 3r^2 + 3r + 1 = 0.$$

The roots are  $-1, -1, -1$ . Then  $r = -1$  with multiplicity 3. Thus, the solutions of the recurrence relation are of the form

$$a_n = (\alpha_{1,0} + \alpha_{1,1}n + \alpha_{1,2}n^2)(-1)^n.$$

To find the constants  $\alpha_{1,0}, \alpha_{1,1}$  and  $\alpha_{1,2}$ , use the initial conditions. This gives

$$a_0 = 1 = \alpha_{1,0}$$

$$a_1 = -2 = -\alpha_{1,0} - \alpha_{1,1} - \alpha_{1,2}$$

$$a_2 = -1 = \alpha_{1,0} + 2\alpha_{1,1} + 4\alpha_{1,2}$$

The simultaneous solution of these three equations is  $\alpha_{1,0} = 1, \alpha_{1,1} = 3$  and  $\alpha_{1,2} = -2$ . Hence, the unique solution to this Recurrence Relation and the given initial conditions is the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  with

$$a_n = (1 + 3n - 2n^2)(-1)^n.$$

### Solving Linear Non- Homogenous Recurrence Relations with Constant Coefficients

Linear non- homogenous recurrence relations with constant coefficients is a recurrence relation of the form

$$a_n = c_1a_{n-1} + c_2a_{n-2} + \cdots + c_k a_{n-k} + f(n)$$

where,  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  are real numbers and  $f(n)$  is a function not identically zero depending only on  $n$ . The Recurrence Relation

$$a_n = c_1a_{n-1} + c_2a_{n-2} + \cdots + c_k a_{n-k}$$

is called the associated homogenous recurrence relation. It plays an important role in solving the given non-homogenous recurrence relation with constant coefficients.

**Examples:** The following are examples of non-homogenous recurrence relation with constant coefficients.

(i)  $a_n = a_{n-1} + 2^n$

(ii)  $a_n = a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} + n^2 + n + 1$

(iii)  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + n3^n$

The key fact about linear nonhomogeneous recurrence relations with constant coefficients is that every solution is the sum of a particular solution and a solution of the associated linear homogeneous recurrence relation.

**Note:** This method of solving linear non-homogenous recurrence relation is similar to solving linear non-homogenous differential equation.

**Theorem:** If  $\{a_n^{(p)}\}$  is a particular solution of the non-homogenous linear recurrence relation with constant coefficients

$$a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2} + \cdots + c_k a_{n-k} + f(n),$$

then every solution is of the form  $\{a_n^{(p)} + a_n^{(h)}\}$ , where  $a_n^{(h)}$  is a solution of the associated homogeneous recurrence relation of the form

$$a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2} + \cdots + c_k a_{n-k}.$$

There is no general procedure for finding the particular solution of a recurrence relation. However, if  $f(n)$  has any one of the forms (i) polynomials in  $n$ , (ii) a constant or power of a constant, then we may guess the forms of particular solution and exactly find out it by the method of undetermined coefficients.

$f(n)$	Form of a particular solution
A constant, $c$	A constant, $d$
A linear function, $c_0 + c_1 n$	A linear function, $d_0 + d_1 n$
$n^2$	$d_0 + d_1 n + d_2 n^2$
An $m^{\text{th}}$ degree polynomial $c_0 + c_1 n + c_2 n^2 + \cdots + c_m n^m$	An $m^{\text{th}}$ degree polynomial $d_0 + d_1 n + d_2 n^2 + \cdots + d_m n^m$
power of a constant $c^n$	For a constant $d$ $dc^n$

**Example:** Solve the recurrence relation  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + 2^n, a_0 = 1$

Solution: The associated homogeneous recurrence relation is  $a_n - 3a_{n-1} = 0$ . The characteristic equation is

$$r - 3 = 0 \Rightarrow r = 3.$$

$\therefore$  The homogeneous solution is

$$a_n^{(h)} = \alpha 3^n$$

where  $\alpha$  is a constant. Since  $f(n)$  of the recurrence relation is  $2^n$ , the particular solution of the recurrence relation is

$$a_n^{(p)} = a_n = d2^n.$$

Using this equation in the given recurrence relation, we get

$$d2^n - 3d2^{n-1} = 2^n \Rightarrow d - \frac{3}{2}d = 1 \Rightarrow 2d - 3d = 2 \Rightarrow d = -2.$$

$$\therefore a_n^{(p)} = -2(2)^n = -2^{n+1}.$$

Hence, the general solution is  $a_n = a_n^{(h)} + a_n^{(p)}$

$$\Rightarrow a_n = \alpha 3^n - 2^{n+1}$$

Using the condition  $a_0 = 1$ , we get  $a_0 = \alpha 3^0 - 2^1 = 1 \Rightarrow \alpha = 3$ .

The required solution is

$$a_n = 3(3)^n - 2^{n+1} = 3^{n+1} - 2^{n+1}.$$

**Example:** Solve the recurrence relation

$$a_n - 7a_{n-1} + 10a_{n-2} = 6 + 8n, a_0 = 1, a_1 = 2.$$

Solution: The associated homogenous recurrence relation is  $a_n - 7a_{n-1} + 10a_{n-2} = 0$ . Then the characteristic equation is  $r^2 - 7r + 10 = 0 \Rightarrow (r - 5)(r - 2) = 0 \Rightarrow r = 2, 5$ . Therefore, homogenous solution is  $a_n^{(h)} = c_1 2^n + c_2 5^n$ .

Let  $a_n^{(p)} = d_0 + d_1 n$  be the particular solution, since  $f(n)$  is a linear polynomial in  $n$ . Using this equation in the given recurrence relation, we get

$$(d_0 + d_1 n) - 7(d_0 + d_1(n - 1)) + 10(d_0 + d_1(n - 2)) = 6 + 8n.$$

Equating the corresponding coefficients on both sides, we get

$$4d_0 - 13d_1 = 6 \text{ and } 4d_1 = 8. \Rightarrow d_1 = 2 \text{ and } d_0 = 8.$$

Thus,

$$a_k^{(p)} = 8 + 2k.$$

Hence, the general solution is  $a_n = a_n^{(h)} + a_n^{(p)}$

$$\Rightarrow a_n = c_1 2^n + c_2 5^n + 8 + 2n$$

Given that,  $a_0 = 1, a_1 = 2$ . Thus,

$$a_0 = 1 \Rightarrow c_1 + c_2 + 8 = 1 \text{ and } a_1 = 2 \Rightarrow 2c_1 + 5c_2 + 8 + 2 = 2.$$

Solving the equations, we get

$$c_1 = -9, c_2 = 2.$$

The required solution is  $a_n = a_n^{(h)} + a_n^{(p)} = -9(2^n) + 2(5^n) + 8 + 2n$ .

In both Examples we were able to find the particular solutions. Now we have to select the particular solution in more general way. When  $f(n)$  is the product of a polynomial in  $n$  and the  $n^{\text{th}}$  power of a constant, we have to select the particular solution which is stated in the below theorem.

**Theorem:** Suppose that  $\{a_n\}$  satisfies the linear non-homogenous recurrence relation

$$a_n = c_1 a_{n-1} + c_2 a_{n-2} + \cdots + c_k a_{n-k} + f(n),$$

where  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  are real numbers, and

$$f(n) = (b_t n^t + b_{t-1} n^{t-1} + \cdots + b_1 n + b_0) s^n,$$

where  $b_0, b_1, \dots, b_t$  and  $s$  are real numbers.

- (i) When  $s$  is not root of the characteristic equation of the associated homogenous linear recurrence relation, there is a particular solution of the form

$$(p_t n^t + p_{t-1} n^{t-1} + \cdots + p_1 n + p_0) s^n.$$

- (ii) When  $s$  is a root of this associated homogenous characteristic equation and its multiplicity is  $m$ , there is a particular solution of the form

$$n^m (p_t n^t + p_{t-1} n^{t-1} + \cdots + p_1 n + p_0) s^n.$$

**Example:** Solve the recurrence relation

$$a_n = 4a_{n-1} - 4a_{n-2} + (n+1)2^n.$$

Solution: The associated homogenous recurrence relation is

$$a_n - 4a_{n-1} + 4a_{n-2} = 0.$$

The characteristic equation is  $r^2 - 4r + 4 = 0$ .

i.e,  $(r-2)^2 = 0 \Rightarrow r = 2, 2$ .

$\therefore$  The homogenous solution is

$$a_n^{(h)} = (d_1 + d_2 n) 2^n.$$

Since, the  $f(n)$  of the recurrence relation is  $(n+1)2^n$  and the characteristic root 2 is repeated twice, we assume the particular solution of the recurrence relation to be

$$a_n^{(p)} = (c_1 + c_2 n) n^2 2^n.$$

Using this equation in the given recurrence relation, we get

$$(c_1 + c_2 n) n^2 2^n - 4(c_1 + c_2(n-1))(n-1)^2 2^{n-1} + 4(c_1 + c_2(n-2))(n-2)^2 2^{n-2}$$

$$= (n + 1)2^n.$$

$$\Rightarrow (c_1 + c_2 n)n^2 - 2(c_1 + c_2(n - 1))(n - 1)^2 + (c_1 + c_2(n - 2))(n - 2)^2 = (n + 1).$$

Putting  $n = 0$ , we get

$$-2(c_1 - c_2) + 4(c_1 - 2c_2) = 1 \Rightarrow 2c_1 - 6c_2 = 4 \Rightarrow c_1 - 3c_2 = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Putting  $n = 1$ ,

$$(c_1 + c_2) + (c_1 - c_2) = 2 \Rightarrow 2c_1 = 2 \Rightarrow c_1 = 1.$$

Thus,  $c_2 = \frac{1}{6}$ . And

$$a_n^{(p)} = \left(1 + \frac{1}{6}n\right)n^2 2^n = \left(n^2 + \frac{n^3}{6}\right) 2^n.$$

Thus, the general solution of the recurrence relation is

$$a_n = a_n^{(h)} + a_n^{(p)} = \left(d_1 + d_2 n + n^2 + \frac{n^3}{6}\right) 2^n.$$

**Example:** Solve the recurrence relation

$$a_n = 4a_{n-1} - 4a_{n-2} + 3n + 2^n, \quad a_0 = 1, a_1 = 1.$$

Solution: The associated homogenous recurrence relation is

$$a_n - 4a_{n-1} + 4a_{n-2} = 0.$$

The characteristic equation is

$$r^2 - 4r + 4 = 0.$$

i.e.,  $(r - 2)^2 = 0 \Rightarrow r = 2, 2$ .

$\therefore$  The homogenous solution is

$$a_n^{(h)} = (c_1 + c_2 n)2^n.$$

Since  $f(n) = 3n + 2^n$ , the particular solution is of the form

$$a_n^{(p)} = a_n^{(p_1)} + a_n^{(p_2)}.$$

Where,  $a_n^{(p_1)} = d_0 + d_1 n$  and  $a_n^{(p_2)} = dn^2 2^n$ .

Using the solution  $a_n^{(p_1)}$  in the recurrence relation, we get

$$\begin{aligned} (d_0 + d_1 n) - 4(d_0 + d_1(n - 1)) + 4(d_0 + d_1(n - 2)) &= 3n. \\ \Rightarrow (d_0 - 4d_1) + d_1 n &= 3n. \end{aligned}$$

Equating the coefficient of  $n$  on both the sides, we get

$$d_1 = 3.$$

Equating the constant terms on both the sides, we get

$$d_0 - 4d_1 = 0 \Rightarrow d_0 = 12.$$



Therefore, the particular solution corresponding to  $3n$  is

$$a_n^{(p_1)} = 12 + 3n$$

Let  $= dn^22^n$

Using the solution  $a_n^{(p_2)}$  in the recurrence relation, we get

$$dn^22^n - 4d(n-1)^22^{n-1} + 4d(n-2)^22^{n-2} = 2^n.$$

Putting  $n = 0$ , we get

$$-2d + 4d = 1.$$

$$\Rightarrow d = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Therefore,  $a_n^{(p_2)} = \frac{1}{2}n^22^n = n^22^{n-1}$ .

Therefore, the particular solution is  $a_n^{(p)} = a_n^{(p_1)} + a_n^{(p_2)} = 12 + 3n + n^22^{n-1}$ .

Hence, the general solution is

$$a_n = (c_1 + c_2n)2^n + 12 + 3n + n^22^{n-1}.$$

Given that,  $a_0 = 1, a_1 = 1$ .

Now,  $a_0 = 1 \Rightarrow c_1 + 12 = 1 \Rightarrow c_1 = -11$ .

Also,  $a_1 = 1 \Rightarrow (c_1 + c_2)2 + 12 + 3 + 2^2 = 1 \Rightarrow 2c_1 + 2c_2 = -18 \Rightarrow c_1 + c_2 = -9 \Rightarrow c_2 = 2$ .

Thus, the required solution is

$$a_n = (2n - 11)2^n + 12 + 3n + n^22^{n+1}.$$

**Example:** Solve the recurrence relation

$$a_n - 2a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} = 2, a_0 = 25, a_1 = 16.$$

The associated homogenous recurrence relation is

$$a_n - 2a_{n-1} + a_{n-2} = 0.$$

The characteristic equation is  $r^2 - 2r + 1 = 0 \Rightarrow r = 1, 1$ .

$\therefore$  The homogenous solution is  $a_n^{(h)} = (c_1 + c_2n)1^n = c_1 + c_2n$ .

Since  $f(n) = 2 = 2(1)^n$ , 1 is the root of the characteristic equation of multiplicity 2,

So, the particular solution is  $a_n^{(p)} = Dn^2$ .

Using this solution in the recurrence relation, we get

$$Dn^2 - 2D(n-1)^2 + D(n-2)^2 = 2.$$

$$\Rightarrow Dn^2 - 2D(n^2 + 1 - 2n) + D(n^2 + 4 - 4n) = 2.$$

Comparing the like coefficients of  $n$  on both the sides, we get

$$2D = 2 \Rightarrow D = 1.$$

So,  $a_n^{(p)} = n^2$ . And hence,

$$a_n = a_n^{(h)} + a_n^{(p)} = c_1 + c_2n + n^2.$$

Now,  $a_0 = 25 \Rightarrow c_1 = 25$  and  $a_1 = 16 \Rightarrow c_1 + c_2 + 1 \Rightarrow c_2 = -10$ .

So,  $a_n = 25 - 10n + n^2$ .

## Generating Functions

**Definition:** The generating function for the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  of real numbers is the infinite series

$$G(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \cdots + a_nx^n + \cdots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_nx^n.$$

The generating function of  $\{a_n\}$  given in this definition is sometimes called the ordinary generating function of  $\{a_n\}$  to distinguish it from other types of generating functions for the sequence.

**Example:** The generating function for the sequences  $\{a_n\}$  with  $a_n = 3$  is given by

$$G(x) = 3 + 3 \cdot x + 3 \cdot x^2 + 3 \cdot x^3 + \cdots + 3 \cdot x^n + \cdots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 3x^n = \frac{3}{1-x}$$

when  $|x| < 1$ .

Similarly, if  $a_n = n + 1$ ,

$$G(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (n+1)x^n = \frac{1}{(1-x)^2}; \quad |x| < 1.$$

We can define generating functions for finite sequence of real numbers by extending a finite sequence  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n$  into an infinite sequence by setting  $a_{n+1} = 0$ ,  $a_{n+2} = 0$ , and so on. The generating function  $G(x)$  of this infinite sequence  $\{a_n\}$  is a polynomial of degree  $n$  because no terms of the form  $a_jx^j, j > n$  occur, that is,  $G(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \cdots + a_nx^n$ .

**Example:** What is the generating function for the sequence 1,1,1,1,1,1?

**Solution:** The generating function for the sequence 1,1,1,1,1,1 is

$$G(x) = 1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5.$$

**Example:** Find the closed form expression of the generating function for the sequence 1,  $a, a^2, \dots$

**Solution:** The closed form expression of the generating function for the sequence 1,  $a, a^2, \dots$  can be written as

$$G(x) = 1 + ax + a^2x^2 + \cdots = 1 + ax + (ax)^2 + (ax)^3 + \cdots = \frac{1}{1-ax}$$

when  $|ax| < 1$ .

**Example:** Find the closed form expression of the generating function for the Fibonacci sequence

$$F_n = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2}, n \geq 2, F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1.$$

The generating function of a Fibonacci sequence  $\{F_n\}$  is given by

$$F(z) = F_0 + F_1z + F_2z^2 + F_3z^3 + \dots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} F_n z^n.$$

Multiplying both sides of above equation by  $z^n$  and summing over all  $n \geq 2$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_n z^n &= \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-1} z^n + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-2} z^n. \\ \Rightarrow \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_n z^n &= z \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-1} z^{n-1} + z^2 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-2} z^{n-2}. \\ \Rightarrow F(z) - F_0 - F_1 z &= z[F(z) - F_0] + z^2 F(z). \end{aligned}$$

Since  $F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} F(z) - 0 - z &= z[F(z) - 0] + z^2 F(z). \\ \Rightarrow (1 - z - z^2)F(z) &= z. \\ \Rightarrow F(z) &= \frac{z}{1 - z - z^2}. \end{aligned}$$

### Properties of Generating functions

Let  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  be two sequences and  $G(z)$  and  $F(z)$  be the corresponding generating functions. That is,

$$G(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n z^n \quad \text{and} \quad F(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n z^n.$$

**1.** The sum of two generating functions is a generating function.

The sum of the generating functions  $G(z)$  and  $F(z)$  is defined as

$$H(z) = G(z) + F(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n z^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n z^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (a_n + b_n) z^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n z^n$$

where  $c_n = a_n + b_n$ .

**2.** The scalar product of any generating function, i.e., if  $\lambda$  is any scalar, then  $\lambda G(z)$  is a generating function.

$$H(z) = \lambda G(z) = \lambda \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n z^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (\lambda a_n) z^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n z^n$$

Where  $c_n = \lambda a_n$ .

**3.** The product of two generating function is again generating function.

$$H(z) = G(z)F(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \sum_{j=0}^n a_j b_{n-j} \right) x^n$$

4. If  $p$  is a positive integer, then  $z^p G(z)$  is a generating function.  
 5. Differentiation of generating function is again generating function.  
 Differentiating  $G(z)$  term by term we get,

$$G'(z) = a_1 + 2a_2z + 3a_3z^2 + \dots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} na_n z^{n-1}.$$

Thus,  $G'(z)$  is generating function of the sequence  $\{na_n\}$ .

### Some Useful Generating Functions

$G(x)$	$a_k$
$(1+x)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n C(n,k)x^k = 1 + C(n,1)x + C(n,2)x^2 + \dots + x^n$	$C(n,k) = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$
$(1+ax)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n C(n,k)a^k x^k$ $= 1 + C(n,1)ax + C(n,2)a^2x^2 + \dots + a^n x^n$	$C(n,k)a^k$
$(1+x^r)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n C(n,k)x^{rk} = 1 + C(n,1)x^r + C(n,2)x^{2r} + \dots + x^{rn}$	$\begin{cases} C\left(n, \frac{k}{r}\right) & \text{if } r k \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$
$\frac{1-x^{n+1}}{1-x} = \sum_{k=0}^n x^k = 1 + x + x^2 + \dots + x^n$	$\begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } k \leq n \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$
$\frac{1}{1-x} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^k = 1 + x + x^2 + \dots$	1
$\frac{1}{1-ax} = 1 + ax + a^2x^2 + \dots$	$a^k$
$\frac{1}{1-x^r} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x^{rk} = 1 + x^r + x^{2r} + \dots$	$\begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } r k \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$
$\frac{1}{(1-x)^2} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (k+1)x^k = 1 + 2x + 3x^2 + \dots$	$k+1$
$\frac{1}{(1-x)^n} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C(n+k-1, k)x^k = 1 + C(n,1)x + C(n+1,2)x^2 + \dots$	$C(n+k-1, k)$ $C(n+k-1, n-1)$

$\frac{1}{(1+x)^n} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C(n+k-1, k)(-1)^k x^k$ $= 1 - C(n, 1)x + C(n+1, 2)x^2 - \dots$	$(-1)^k C(n+k-1, k)$ $(-1)^k C(n+k-1, n-1)$
$\frac{1}{(1-ax)^n} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (n+k-1, k)a^k x^k$ $= 1 + C(n, 1)ax + C(n+1, 2)a^2 x^2 + \dots$	$C(n+k-1, k)a^k$ $C(n+k-1, n-1)a^k$
$e^x = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k!} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots$	$\frac{1}{k!}$
$\ln(1+x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k} x^k = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \dots$	$\frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k}$

### Solving of Recurrence Relation using generating function

**Example:** Use generating function to solve the recurrence relation  $a_n = 3a_{n-1} + 2, n \geq 1$  with  $a_0 = 1$ .

Solution: Let the generating function of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  be  $G(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n z^n$ . Given the recurrence relation is

$$a_n = 3a_{n-1} + 2.$$

Multiplying both the sides by  $z^n$  and summing over all  $n \geq 1$ , we have

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n z^n = 3 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n-1} z^n + 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} z^n.$$

$$= 3z \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_{n-1} z^{n-1} + 2z \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} z^{n-1}.$$

$$\Rightarrow G(z) - a_0 = 3zG(z) + \frac{2z}{1-z}.$$

$$\Rightarrow G(z) - 1 = 3zG(z) + \frac{2z}{1-z}.$$

$$\Rightarrow (1-3z)G(z) = 1 + \frac{2z}{1-z} = \frac{1+z}{1-z}.$$

$$\Rightarrow G(z) = \frac{(1+z)}{(1-z)(1-3z)}.$$

Let

$$\frac{(1+z)}{(1-z)(1-3z)} = \frac{A}{(1-z)} + \frac{B}{(1-3z)}.$$

$$\Rightarrow (1 + z) = A(1 - 3z) + B(1 - z).$$

$$\Rightarrow A = -1, B = 2.$$

$$\therefore G(z) = \frac{2}{1 - 3z} - \frac{1}{1 - z}.$$

$$a_n = 2(3^n) - 1.$$

**Example:** Given  $a_0 = 2, a_1 = 7$ , solve the recurrence relation

$$a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}; \text{ for all } n \geq 2$$

by using generating function.

**Solution:** Let  $G(t)$  be the generating function of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$ . Then

$$G(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n t^n.$$

Given that,

$$a_n = 5a_{n-1} - 6a_{n-2}; \text{ for all } n \geq 2.$$

Multiplying  $t^n$  in both sides, we get

$$a_n t^n = 5a_{n-1} t^n - 6a_{n-2} t^n.$$

Now taking the sum over  $n$  from 2 to  $\infty$ , we have

$$\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_n t^n = \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} 5a_{n-1} t^n - \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} 6a_{n-2} t^n.$$

Simplifying,

$$\Rightarrow \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n t^n - a_0 - a_1 t = 5t \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-1} t^{n-1} - 6t^2 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-2} t^{n-2}$$

$$\Rightarrow G(t) - 2 - 7t = 5t \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} a_m t^m - 6t^2 \sum_{s=0}^{\infty} a_s t^s$$

$$\Rightarrow G(t) - 2 - 7t = 5t \left( \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} a_m t^m - a_0 \right) - 6t^2 G(t)$$

$$\Rightarrow G(t) - 2 - 7t = 5t(G(t) - 2) - 6t^2 G(t)$$

$$\Rightarrow (1 - 5t + 6t^2)G(t) = 2 - 3t$$

$$\Rightarrow G(t) = \frac{2 - 3t}{1 - 5t + 6t^2}.$$

Thus, generating function  $G(t)$  of  $\{a_n\}$  is  $\frac{2-3t}{1-5t+6t^2}$ . Now  $a_n$  is the coefficient of  $t^n$  in the expansion of  $G(t)$ . Thus,

$$G(t) = \frac{2 - 3t}{(1 - 2t)(1 - 3t)} = \frac{3}{1 - 3t} - \frac{1}{1 - 2t} = 3 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (3t)^n - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2t)^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (3^{n+1} - 2^n)t^n.$$

Therefore,  $a_n = 3^{n+1} - 2^n$ .

**Example:** Use generating function to solve the recurrence relation  $a_n - 2a_{n-1} - 3a_{n-2} = 0, n \geq 2$  with  $a_0 = 3, a_1 = 1$ .

**Solution:** Let the generating function of the sequence  $\{a_n\}$  be  $G(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n z^n$ .

Multiplying both the sides of recurrence relation by  $z^n$  and summing over all  $n \geq 2$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_n z^n - 2 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-1} z^n - 3 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-2} z^n = 0. \\ \Rightarrow & \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_n z^n - 2z \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-1} z^{n-1} - 3z^2 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-2} z^{n-2} = 0. \\ \Rightarrow & [G(z) - a_0 - a_1 z] - 2z[G(z) - a_0] - 3z^2 G(z) = 0. \\ \Rightarrow & (1 - 2z - 3z^2)G(z) - 3 - z - 2z(-3) = 0. \\ \Rightarrow & (1 - 2z - 3z^2)G(z) = 3 - 5z. \\ \Rightarrow & G(z) = \frac{(3 - 5z)}{(1 - 2z - 3z^2)} = \frac{(3 - 5z)}{(1 - 3z)(1 + z)}. \end{aligned}$$

Let  $\frac{(3-5z)}{(1-3z)(1+z)} = \frac{A}{(1-3z)} + \frac{B}{(1+z)}$ .

Equating the numerators on both the sides, we get

$$3 - 5z = A(1 + z) + B(1 - 3z).$$

From this, we get  $A = 1, B = 2$  and

$$\therefore G(z) = \frac{1}{1 + 3z} + \frac{2}{1 + z} = 1(3)^n + 2(-1)^n.$$

Thus, the required solution is  $a_n = 3^n + 2(-1)^n$ .

**Example:** Use generating function to solve the recurrence relation  $a_n - 4a_{n-1} + 4a_{n-2} = 4^n, n \geq 2$  with  $a_0 = 2, a_1 = 8$ .

**Solution:** Multiplying both the sides of recurrence relation by  $z^n$  and summing over all  $n \geq 2$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_n z^n &= 4 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-1} z^n - 4 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-2} z^n + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} 4^n z^n. \\ \Rightarrow \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_n z^n &= 4z \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-1} z^{n-1} - 4z^2 \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} a_{n-2} z^{n-2} + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} 4^n z^n. \\ \Rightarrow [G(z) - a_0 - a_1 z] - 4z[G(z) - a_0] + 4z^2 G(z) &= \frac{1}{(1-4z)} - 1 - 4z. \\ \Rightarrow [G(z) - 2 - 8z] - 4z[G(z) - 2] + 4z^2 G(z) &= \frac{1}{(1-4z)} + 1 - 4z. \\ \Rightarrow [1 - 4z + 4z^2]G(z) &= \frac{1}{(1-4z)} + 1 - 4z. \\ \Rightarrow G(z) &= \frac{1 + (1-4z)^2}{(1-4z)(1-2z)^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$\frac{1 + (1-4z)^2}{(1-4z)(1-2z)^2} = \frac{A}{1-4z} + \frac{B}{1-2z} + \frac{C}{(1-2z)^2}$$

Equating the numerators on both the sides, we get

$$1 + (1-4z)^2 = A(1-2z)^2 + B(1-4z)(1-2z) + C(1-4z)$$

Substituting  $z = \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4}, 0$ , we get  $C = -2, A = 4, B = 0$ . Thus,

$$G(z) = \frac{4}{1-4z} - \frac{2}{(1-2z)^2}.$$

And

$$a_n = 4(4^n) - 2(n+1)2^n = 4^{n+1} - (n+1)2^{n+1}.$$

The required solution is  $a_n = 4^{n+1} - (n+1)2^{n+1}$ .

**Example: (Application of Recurrence Relation for Code word Enumeration)** A computer system considers a string of decimal digits a valid codeword if it contains an even number of 0 digits. Let  $a_n$  be the number of valid  $n$ -digit codewords. Find a recurrence relation for  $a_n$ . Use generating function method to find a solution of the recurrence relation.

**Solution:** Initially  $a_1 = 9$  as there are 9 valid one digit codeword except 0. Firstly, a valid string of  $n$  digits can be made by appending a valid string of  $n-1$  digits with a digit other than 0. This



can be done in  $9a_{n-1}$  ways. Secondly, a valid string of  $n$  digits can be obtained by appending a 0 to a string of length  $n - 1$  that is not valid. The number of ways this can be done equals the number of invalid  $(n - 1)$ digit strings. Since, there are  $10^{n-1}$  strings of length  $n - 1$  and  $a_{n-1}$  valid strings, there are  $10^{n-1} - a_{n-1}$  valid  $n$ -digit strings obtained by appending an invalid string of length  $n - 1$  with 0. Because all the valid strings of length  $n$  are produced in one of these two ways, it follows that there are total number of valid string  $a_n$  of length  $n$  are given as

$$a_n = 9a_{n-1} + (10^{n-1} - a_{n-1})$$

i.e.

$$a_n = 8a_{n-1} + 10^{n-1}, \quad a_1 = 9$$

Let us multiply both the sides of the recurrence relation by  $x^n$  to obtain

$$a_n x^n = 8a_{n-1} x^n + 10^{n-1} x^n.$$

Let  $G(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$  be the generating function of the sequence  $a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots$ . We sum both the side of the last equation with  $n = 1$ , to find that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n x^n &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 8a_{n-1} x^n + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 10^{n-1} x^n \\ \Rightarrow G(x) - 1 &= 8xG(x) + \frac{x}{(1 - 10x)}. \end{aligned}$$

Solving for  $G(x)$  shows that

$$G(x) = \frac{1 - 9x}{(1 - 8x)(1 - 10x)}.$$

Expanding the R.H.S of this equation into partial fractions gives

$$\begin{aligned} G(x) &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{1 - 8x} + \frac{1}{1 - 10x} \right). \\ G(x) &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 8^n x^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 10^n x^n \right). \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (8^n + 10^n) x^n. \end{aligned}$$

Consequently, we have the solution of the Recurrence Relation

$$a_n = \frac{1}{2} (8^n + 10^n).$$

**Example:** A popular puzzle of the late nineteenth century invented by the French mathematician Édouard Lucas, called the Tower of Hanoi, consists of three pegs mounted on a board together with disks of different sizes. Initially these disks are placed on the first peg in order of size, with the largest on the bottom. The rules of the puzzle allow disks to be moved one at a time from one peg to another as long as a disk is never placed on top of a smaller disk. The goal of the puzzle is to have all the disks on the second peg in order of size, with the largest on the bottom.

Let  $H_n$  denote the number of moves needed to solve the Tower of Hanoi problem with  $n$  disks. Set up a recurrence relation for the sequence  $H_n$  and solve using generating function.

**Solution:** Let  $H_n$  denote the number of moves needed to solve the Tower of Hanoi problem with  $n$  disks.

Begin with  $n$  disks on peg 1, we can transfer the top  $n - 1$  disks, following the rules of the puzzle, to peg 3 using  $H_{n-1}$  moves.

We keep the largest disk fixed during these moves. Then, we use one move to transfer the largest disk to the second peg.

Now we can transfer the  $n - 1$  disks on peg 3 to peg 2 using  $H_{n-1}$  additional moves, placing them on top of the largest disk, which always stays fixed on the bottom of peg 2.

Moreover, it is easy to see that the puzzle cannot be solved using fewer steps. This shows that

$$H_n = H_{n-1} + 1 + H_{n-1} = 2H_{n-1} + 1.$$

The initial condition is  $H_1 = 1$ , because one disk can be transferred from peg 1 to peg 2, according to the rules of the puzzle, in one move.

Thus, the recurrence relation for the sequence  $H_n$  is

$$H_n = 2H_{n-1} + 1 \text{ for all } n \geq 2$$

with initial condition  $H_1 = 1$ .

Now we have to solve the recurrence relation using generating function. Let  $H_0 = 0$ , as zero disk can be transferred from peg 1 to peg 2, according to the rules of the puzzle, in zero move.

As

$$H_n = 2H_{n-1} + 1.$$

Multiplying  $t^n$  in both sides

$$H_n t^n = 2H_{n-1} t^n + t^n.$$

Now taking the sum over  $n$  from 2 to  $\infty$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} H_n t^n &= \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} 2H_{n-1} t^n + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} t^n \\ \Rightarrow \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} H_n t^n - H_0 - H_1 t &= 2t \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} H_{n-1} t^{n-1} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} t^n - 1 - t \\ \Rightarrow G(t) - t &= 2t \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} H_{n-1} t^{n-1} + \frac{1}{1-t} - 1 - t \end{aligned}$$

Where  $G(t)$  is the generating function of the sequence  $\{H_n\}$ . i.e.  $G(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} H_n t^n$ .

Thus, by shifting of index

$$\begin{aligned} G(t) &= 2t \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} H_m t^m + \frac{1}{1-t} - 1 \\ \Rightarrow G(t) &= 2t \left( \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} H_m t^m - H_0 \right) + \frac{1}{1-t} - 1 \\ \Rightarrow G(t) &= 2tG(t) + \frac{1}{1-t} - 1 \\ \Rightarrow (1-2t)G(t) &= \frac{1}{1-t} - 1 \\ \Rightarrow (1-2t)G(t) &= \frac{t}{1-t} \\ \Rightarrow G(t) &= \frac{t}{(1-t)(1-2t)} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, generating function  $G(t)$  of  $\{H_n\}$  is  $\frac{t}{(1-t)(1-2t)}$ .

Now  $H_n$  is the coefficient of  $t^n$  in the expansion of  $G(t)$ .

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}
 G(t) &= \frac{t}{(1-t)(1-2t)} \\
 &= \frac{1}{1-2t} - \frac{1}{1-t} \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2t)^n - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} t^n \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 2^n t^n - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} t^n \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2^n - 1) t^n
 \end{aligned}$$

i.e.

$$G(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2^n - 1) t^n.$$

Therefore,  $H_n = 2^n - 1$ . i.e. the number of moves needed to solve the Tower of Hanoi problem with  $n$  disks is  $2^n - 1$ .

## Unit—IV Algebraic Structure

**Abstract Algebra:** Abstract algebra is the study of algebraic structures. Algebraic structures include group, ring, field, module, vector space, lattices and algebras. The term abstract algebra was coined in the 20<sup>th</sup> century to distinguish this area of study from the other parts of algebra. Other part of mathematics, concrete problems and examples have played important role in the development of abstract algebra.

Group theory has extensive applications in mathematics, science, and engineering. Many algebraic structures such as fields and vector spaces may be defined concisely in terms of groups, and group theory provides an important tool for studying symmetry, since the symmetries of any object form a group. Groups are thus essential abstractions in branches of physics involving symmetry principles, such as relativity, quantum mechanics, and particle physics. Furthermore, their ability to represent geometric transformations finds applications in chemistry, computer graphics, material sciences, cryptography and other fields.

**Binary Operation:** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be two sets. A function from  $A \times A$  to  $B$  is called a binary operation on  $A$ . In simple words binary operation is a process that combines two elements of a set to obtain an element of a set. Binary operations are mostly denoted by  $*, \#, +, \times, \cdot, \circ, \cup, \cap, \odot, \otimes, \oplus$  etc.... If  $*$  is a binary operation on a set  $A$  and  $a, b \in A$ , then  $*(a, b)$  is generally written as  $a * b$ .

**Example:** Addition, subtraction, multiplication and division are binary operations on the set of integers.

**Closure Property:** A binary operation  $*$  on a set  $A$  is called closed if  $a * b \in A$  for all  $a, b \in A$ .

**Example:** Addition '+' on set of natural numbers  $\mathbb{N}$  is a closed binary operation, since sum of two natural number is always a natural number. But subtraction '-' is not a closed binary operation on  $\mathbb{N}$ . Since,  $1, 2 \in \mathbb{N}$  but  $1 - 2 \notin \mathbb{N}$ .

**Example:** Set of irrational number under multiplication is not closed. *i. e.* Multiplication is not closed on  $\mathbb{R} - \mathbb{Q}$ . Since  $\sqrt{3} \times \sqrt{3} = 3 \notin \mathbb{R} - \mathbb{Q}$ .

**Algebraic Structure:** A nonempty set  $S$  with a closed binary operation  $*$  is called an algebraic system or algebraic structure and it is denoted by  $(S, *)$ .

**Semigroup:** A non-empty set  $S$  together with a binary operation  $*$  is said to be a semigroup, if it satisfies the following properties:

- (i) Closure:  $a * b \in S, \forall a, b \in S$ .
- (ii) Associativity:  $a * (b * c) = (a * b) * c, \forall a, b, c \in S$ .

### Examples

- (i) Set of natural number under usual addition is a semigroup.
- (ii) Set of even integers under addition is a semigroup.
- (iii) The set of integers under subtraction is not a semigroup. Subtraction is not associative. If we take,  $1, 2, 3 \in \mathbb{Z}$ , then  $1 - (2 - 3) \neq (1 - 2) - 3$ .
- (iv) A rectangular array of the form  $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$  is said to be a  $2 \times 2$  matrix. The set of all  $2 \times 2$  matrices with real entries form a semigroup under component wise addition. That is

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ c_1 & d_1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} a_2 & b_2 \\ c_2 & d_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 + a_2 & b_1 + b_2 \\ c_1 + c_2 & d_1 + d_2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Clearly, it holds closure and associative properties.

**Monoid:** A non-empty set  $M$  together with a binary operation  $*$  is said to be a monoid, if satisfies the following conditions:

- (i) Closure:  $a * b \in M; \forall a, b \in M$ .
- (ii) Associativity:  $a * (b * c) = (a * b) * c; \forall a, b, c \in M$ .
- (iii) Identity: There exist an element  $e \in M$  such that  $a * e = e * a = a, \forall a \in M$ .

### Examples

- (i) Set of integers  $\mathbb{Z}$  under usual multiplication  $\times$  form a monoid. As we know that multiplication of two integers is an integer, multiplication is closed on  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Since for any three integers  $k, l, m$  we have  $(k \times l) \times m = k \times (l \times m)$ , multiplication is associative on  $\mathbb{Z}$ . The integer 1 is the identity element as  $k \times 1 = 1 \times k = k$ . Hence  $\mathbb{Z}$  is a monoid under usual multiplication.
- (ii)  $(\mathbb{Z}, +), (\mathbb{Q}, +), (\mathbb{Q}, \times), (\mathbb{R}, +)$  and  $(\mathbb{R}, \times)$  are monoids.
- (iii) The set of complex number  $\mathbb{C}$  is a monoid under addition  $+$ , where addition is defined as  $(a + bi) + (c + di) = (a + c) + (b + d)i$ .
- (iv) Set of natural number under addition is not a monoid.
- (v) Set of even integers under multiplication is not a monoid.
- (vi) The set of all  $2 \times 2$  matrix with real entries form a monoid under usual matrix multiplication

**Group:** A non-empty set  $G$ , together with a binary operation  $*$  is said to be form a group, if it satisfies the following properties:

- (i) Closure:  $a * b \in G, \forall a, b \in G$ .
- (ii) Associativity:  $a * (b * c) = (a * b) * c, \forall a, b, c \in G$ .
- (iii) Identity: There exists an element  $e \in G$  such that  $a * e = e * a = a, \forall a \in G$ .
- (iv) Existence of Inverse:  $\forall a \in G, \exists b \in G$  (depending on  $a$ ) such that  $a * b = b * a = e$ .  
The element  $b$  is called inverse of  $a$ .

**Note:** In a group  $(G, *)$  identity element is unique and generally denoted by  $e$ . Inverse of an element  $a$  is unique and is denoted by  $a^{-1}$ . The element  $a * a$  is denoted by  $a^2$  and  $a^n * a =$

$a^{n+1}$  for any integer  $n$ . Also  $a^0 = e$ . We can write  $a * b$  as  $ab$ , when the operation is well understood. **Order of a group  $G$**  is number of elements in  $G$  and it is denoted by  $o(G)$  or  $|G|$ . Order of an element  $a$  is the least positive integer  $n$  such that  $a^n = e$ , where  $e$  is the identity element and is denoted by  $o(a)$ .

### Examples

- (i)  $(\mathbb{Z}, +)$  is a group under usual addition. In verse of an integer  $m$  is  $-m$ .
- (ii)  $(\mathbb{Z}, \times)$  is not a group. Product of two integers is always an integer. Therefore, closure property hold. Since,  $(a \cdot b) \cdot c = a \cdot (b \cdot c) \forall a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$ . So, associative hold. 1 is the identity element of  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Now,  $2 \in \mathbb{Z}$  but 2 has no inverse in  $\mathbb{Z}$ . There does not exist  $a \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $a \times 2 = 2 \times a = 1$ . Therefore, inverse property does not hold. Thus, set of integers under multiplication is not a group.
- (iii)  $(\mathbb{C}, +)$  is a group. But  $(\mathbb{C}, \times)$  is not a group where  $\times$  is the multiplication defined by  $(a + ib) \cdot (c + id) = (ac - bd) + i(ad + bc)$ .
- (iv) Let  $G$  be the set  $\{1, -1\}$ . It is a group under usual multiplication.

$\times$	<b>1</b>	<b>-1</b>
<b>1</b>	1	-1
<b>-1</b>	-1	1

- (v) The set of nonzero real numbers is a group under ordinary multiplication. The identity element is 1. The inverse of  $a$  is  $\frac{1}{a}$ .
- (vi)  $\mathbb{C}^* = \mathbb{C} - \{0\}$  form a group under usual multiplication.  $1 = 1 + 0i$  is the identity element and  $\frac{a-ib}{a^2+b^2}$  is the inverse of  $a + ib$ .
- (vii) The set of all  $2 \times 2$  matrice with real enteries form a group under component wise addition. That is

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ c_1 & d_1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} a_2 & b_2 \\ c_2 & d_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 + a_2 & b_1 + b_2 \\ c_1 + c_2 & d_1 + d_2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The identity element is  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$  and inverse of  $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$  is  $\begin{bmatrix} -a & -b \\ -c & -d \end{bmatrix}$ .

- (viii) The set  $\mathbb{Z}_n = \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, n - 1\}$  for  $n \geq 1$  is a group under addition modulo  $n$ . The identity element is 0 and for any  $j > 0 \in \mathbb{Z}_n$ , the inverse of  $j$  is  $n - j$ . For the set  $\mathbb{Z}_4 = \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ , we can form a table of operations as bellow:

<b>mod 4</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>0</b>	0	1	2	3
<b>1</b>	1	2	3	0
<b>2</b>	2	3	0	1
<b>3</b>	3	0	1	2

- (ix) The set  $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, n - 1\}$  is a group under multiplication modulo  $n$  if and only if  $n$  is prime. That is  $\mathbb{Z}_p - \{0\}$  is a group under multiplication modulo  $p$  if and only if  $p$  is a prime.  $\mathbb{Z}_7$  is a group under multiplication modulo 7. This can verify by the table:

<b>mod 7</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>1</b>	1	2	3	4	5	6
<b>2</b>	2	4	6	1	3	5
<b>3</b>	3	6	2	5	1	4
<b>4</b>	4	1	5	2	6	3
<b>5</b>	5	3	1	6	4	2
<b>6</b>	6	5	4	3	2	1

From the above table it is observed that 1 is the identity element and  $2^{-1} = 4, 3^{-1} = 3, 5^{-1} = 5$ .

- (x) Let  $U(n)$  the set of all positive integer less than  $n$  and relatively prime to  $n$ . That is  $U(n) = \{m: 1 \leq m < n, \text{ and } \gcd(m, n) = 1\}$ . Then  $U(n)$  is a group under multiplication modulo  $n$ . For  $n = 10, U(10) = \{1, 3, 7, 9\}$  is a group under multiplication modulo 10. The Cayley table for  $U(10)$  is



<b>mod 10</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>1</b>	1	3	7	9
<b>3</b>	3	9	1	7
<b>7</b>	7	1	9	3
<b>9</b>	9	7	3	1

- (xi)  $G = \{1, -1, i, -i\}$  is a group under multiplication. This can be verified by the bellow table:

$\times$	<b>1</b>	<b>-1</b>	<b><i>i</i></b>	<b><i>-i</i></b>
<b>1</b>	1	-1	<i>i</i>	<i>-i</i>
<b>-1</b>	-1	1	<i>-i</i>	<i>i</i>
<b><i>i</i></b>	<i>i</i>	<i>-i</i>	-1	1
<b><i>-i</i></b>	<i>-i</i>	<i>i</i>	1	-1

From the table it is observed that the identity element is 1 and inverse of  $-1$  is  $-1$ , inverse of  $i$  is  $-i$ .

- (xii) The set  $G = \{2, 4, 6, 8\}$  is a group under multiplication modulo 10. This can be shown in bellow table:

<b>mod 10</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>2</b>	4	8	2	6
<b>4</b>	8	6	4	2
<b>6</b>	2	4	6	8
<b>8</b>	6	2	8	4

- (xiii) The set  $G = \{1, 2, 3\}$  under multiplication modulo 4 is not a group as  $(2 \times 2) \bmod 4 = 0 \notin G$ .

**Example:** Check whether the following operation  $*$  on real number form a group or not.

$$a * b = a + b - ab, \forall a, b \in \mathbb{R}.$$

Solution: (i) Closure:

$$a * b = a + b - ab \in \mathbb{R}, \quad \forall a, b \in \mathbb{R}$$

(ii) Associative: We have to prove,  $a * (b * c) = (a * b) * c$

$$a * (b * c) = a * (b + c - bc) = a + (b + c - bc) - a(b + c - bc)$$

$$a * (b * c) = a + b + c - bc - ab - ac + abc$$

$$a * (b * c) = a + b + c - ab - bc - ac + abc$$

Now,

$$(a * b) * c = (a + b - ab) * c = a + b - ab + c - (a + b - ab)c$$

$$(a * b) * c = a + b + c - ab - ac - bc + abc$$

$$(a * b) * c = a + b + c - ab - bc - ac + abc$$

Clearly,  $a * (b * c) = (a * b) * c, \forall a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$ . Hence, associative property hold.

(iii) Identity: 0 is the identity element as

$$a * 0 = 0 * a = a + 0 - a \cdot 0 = a, \forall a \in \mathbb{R}.$$

(iv) Inverse: Let  $a \in \mathbb{R}$ , and  $b \in \mathbb{R}$  such that

$$a * b = b * a = 0.$$

$$\Rightarrow a + b - ab = b + a - ba = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow a + b - ab = a + b - ab = a + b(1 - a) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow b = \frac{-a}{1-a}, \text{ provided } a \neq 1.$$

Thus, inverse of 1 does not exist and hence  $\mathbb{R}$  is not a group under the given binary operation. It is a monoid.

**Some properties of Groups:** In a group  $(G,*)$

(i) Identity element is unique.

(ii) Inverse of an element is unique.

(iii)  $(a^{-1})^{-1} = a, \forall a \in G.$

(iv)  $(a * b)^{-1} = b^{-1} * a^{-1}, \forall a, b \in G.$

(v)  $a * b = a * c$  implies  $b = c$ , and  $b * a = c * a$  implies  $b = c \forall a, b, c \in G.$

Proof: (i) Suppose  $e$  and  $e'$  be two identity elements of the group  $G$ . As,  $e$  is an identity and  $e' \in G$ ,

$$e * e' = e' * e = e' \quad (1)$$

Also, as  $e'$  is an identity and  $e \in G$ ,

$$e' * e = e * e' = e \quad (2)$$

Then from (1) and (2), we have  $e = e'$ .

(ii) Let  $a \in G$  be any element and let  $a'$  and  $a''$  be two inverses of  $a$ , then

$$a * a' = a' * a = e.$$

$$a * a'' = a'' * a = e.$$

Now,

$$a' = a' * e = a' * (a * a'') = (a' * a) * a'' = e * a'' = a''.$$

Hence, inverse of  $a$  is unique.

(iii) Since  $a^{-1}$  is inverse of  $a$ ,  $a * a^{-1} = a^{-1} * a = e$ . Thus,  $a$  is inverse of  $a^{-1}$ . That is  $(a^{-1})^{-1} = a$ .

(iv) We have to prove  $a * b$  has inverse  $b^{-1} * a^{-1}$ . That is

$$(a * b) * (b^{-1} * a^{-1}) = (b^{-1} * a^{-1}) * (a * b) = e.$$

Now,

$$(a * b) * (b^{-1} * a^{-1}) = a * (b * b^{-1}) * a^{-1} = a * e * a^{-1} = a * a^{-1} = e.$$

Similarly,

$$(b^{-1} * a^{-1}) * (a * b) = b^{-1} * (a^{-1} * a) * b = b^{-1} * e * b = b^{-1} * b = e.$$

Thus,  $(a * b)^{-1} = b^{-1} * a^{-1}$ ,  $\forall a, b \in G$ .

(v) Let  $a * b = a * c$ . Then

$$b = e * b = (a^{-1} * a) * b = a^{-1} * (a * b) = a^{-1} * (a * c) = (a^{-1} * a) * c = e * c = c.$$

Thus,  $a * b = a * c \Rightarrow b = c$ .

Similarly,  $b * a = c * a$  implies  $a = c$ .

**Abelian Group:** A group  $G$  is said to be an abelian group if  $a * b = b * a$ ,  $\forall a, b \in G$ . An abelian group is also called a commutative group.

**Examples:**

- (i) The set  $(\mathbb{Z}, +)$  is an abelian group. Since,  $a + b = b + a$ ,  $\forall a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ .
- (ii) Set of all  $2 \times 2$  matrices over integers under addition form an abelian group.
- (iii) Set of all  $2 \times 2$  real matrices with non-zero determinant under matrix multiplication is a non-abelian group.
- (iv) Let  $G = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$  and define a binary operation  $*$  on  $G$  by  $a * b = (a + b) \bmod 5$ . That is  $a * b = c$ , where  $c$  is least nonnegative integer obtained as remainder when  $a + b$  divided by 5. Then  $G$  is an abelian group under the binary operation  $*$ .
- (v) The set  $G = \{1, -1, i, -i\}$  is an abelian group under multiplication.
- (vi) The set of all permutations on a set of  $n$  elements is a non-abelian group under composition of functions.

**Example:** Let  $G = \mathbb{R} - \{0\}$  and  $a * b = \frac{ab}{2}$ ,  $\forall a, b \in G$ . Show that  $(G, *)$  is an abelian group.

Solution: (i) Closure:  $a * b = \frac{ab}{2} \in G, \forall a, b \in G.$

(ii) Associative:  $(a * b) * c = \frac{ab}{2} * c = \frac{abc}{4}.$

$$a * (b * c) = a * \left(\frac{bc}{2}\right) = \frac{abc}{4}.$$

$$\Rightarrow (a * b) * c = a * (b * c).$$

(iii) Identity:  $a * 2 = \frac{a \cdot 2}{2} = a, \forall a \in G.$

$$2 * a = \frac{2 \cdot a}{2} = a, \forall a \in G.$$

Hence 2 is the identity element of  $G.$

(iv) Inverse: Let  $a \in G,$  and  $b \in G$  such that

$$a * b = b * a = 2. \quad \Rightarrow \frac{ab}{2} = \frac{ba}{2} = 2. \quad \Rightarrow b = \frac{4}{a}.$$

Hence inverse of  $a$  exists and is  $\frac{4}{a}.$

So,  $G$  is a group.

(v)  $a * b = \frac{ab}{2}, \quad b * a = \frac{ba}{2}. (\because ab = ba, \forall a, b \in \mathbb{R})$

$$\Rightarrow a * b = b * a, \forall a, b \in G.$$

Thus,  $G$  is an abelian group.

**Example:** Show that in a group  $(G, *)$ , if  $a^2 = e. \forall a \in G,$  where  $e$  is the identity element, then  $G$  is a commutative group.

**Solution:**  $a * b = e * a * b = (b * a)^2 * a * b = b * a * b * a * a * b$

$$= b * a * b * a^2 * b = b * a * b * e * b = b * a * b * b$$

$$= b * a * b^2 = b * a * e = b * a.$$

$$\Rightarrow a * b = b * a, \forall a, b \in G, \quad \Rightarrow G \text{ is an abelian group.}$$

**Alternative:** Let  $x \in G,$  then

$$x^2 = e \Rightarrow x * x = e \Rightarrow x * x * x^{-1} = e * x^{-1} \Rightarrow x * e = x^{-1} \Rightarrow x = x^{-1}.$$

Thus,  $\forall x \in G, x = x^{-1}$ . Now for  $a, b \in G$ , we have,

$$a * b = (a * b)^{-1} = b^{-1} * a^{-1} = b * a.$$

Therefore,  $(G, *)$  is an abelian group.

**Cyclic Group:** A group  $G$  is said to be cyclic if  $\exists a \in G$  such that every element of  $G$  can be expressed as a power of  $a$ , i.e.  $b = a^k$  for  $b \in G$  and  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then  $a$  is called a generator of group  $G$  and we write  $G = \langle a \rangle$ . In other words,  $G$  is said to be a cyclic group if there exist an element  $a \in G$  such that  $G = \{a^n : n \in \mathbb{N}\}$ .

**Example:**  $G = \{1, -1, i, -i\}$  is a cyclic group under multiplication and  $i$  is a generator, as  $i^1 = i, i^2 = -1, i^3 = -i, i^4 = 1$ . Here,  $-i$  is also a generator of  $G$ . Thus,  $i$  and  $-i$  are generators of  $G$ .

**Example:**  $\mathbb{Z}_5 = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$  is a group under addition modulo 5. One can verify that it is a cyclic group.

**Example:** Order of a cyclic group is equal to the order of its generator.

**Subgroup:** A non-empty subset  $H$  of a group  $G$  is said to be subgroup of  $G$ , if  $H$  forms a group under the binary operation of  $G$ .

**Example:**  $(\mathbb{Z}, +)$  is a subgroup of  $(\mathbb{R}, +)$ .

**Example:** A subgroup of a cyclic group is cyclic.

**Example:** Intersection of two subgroup is a subgroup and union of two subgroup is a subgroup if and only if one of them is contained in the other.

**Coset:** Let  $H$  be a subgroup of  $G$  and let  $a \in G$  be any element. Then the set  $Ha = \{ha : h \in H\}$  is called a right Coset of  $H$  in  $G$  and the set  $aH = \{ah : h \in H\}$  is called a left Coset of  $H$  in  $G$ .

**Remark:** Note that a right coset is not essentially a subgroup. For example,  $G = \{1, -1, i, -i\}$  is a group under multiplication.  $H = \{1, -1\}$  is a subgroup under multiplication but  $Hi = \{i, -i\}$  is not a subgroup of  $G$ .

**Example:** Let  $H$  be a subgroup of  $G$  and define a relation  $R$  on  $G$  by  $(a, b) \in R$  if and only if  $ab^{-1} \in H$ . Then show that  $R$  is an equivalence relation on  $G$ . Also equivalence class of an element  $a$  is  $Ha$ .

Solution:

- (i) Let  $e$  be the identity element in  $G$  and  $a \in G$ . Since  $G$  is a group,  $a^{-1} \in G$ . As  $H$  is a subgroup of  $G$ ,  $e \in H$ , which gives  $aa^{-1} \in H$ . That is  $(a, a) \in R$  and hence  $R$  is reflexive.
- (ii) Let  $(a, b) \in R$ . Then  $ab^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow (ab^{-1})^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow (b^{-1})^{-1}a^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow ba^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow (b, a) \in R$ . Thus,  $R$  is symmetric.
- (iii) Let  $(a, b)$  and  $(b, c)$  are in  $R$ . Then  $ab^{-1}$  and  $bc^{-1}$  are in  $H$ . Since  $H$  is a subgroup,  $(ab^{-1})(bc^{-1})$  is in  $H$ . That is  $ac^{-1}$  is in  $H$  and therefore  $(a, c)$  is in  $R$ . Hence,  $R$  is transitive.

Thus,  $R$  is an equivalence relation.

Let  $[a]_R$  be the equivalence class of  $a \in G$  and consider the right coset  $Ha$  of  $H$ . Now

$$b \in [a]_R \Rightarrow (a, b) \in R \Rightarrow (b, a) \in R \Rightarrow ba^{-1} \in H \Rightarrow ba = h \Rightarrow b = ha \Rightarrow b \in Ha.$$

Hence  $[a]_R \subseteq Ha$ . Similarly,  $Ha \subseteq [a]_R$ . Hence  $[a]_R = Ha$ . That is equivalence class of an element  $a$  is the right coset  $Ha$ .

Since right cosets are equivalence classes, any two right cosets are either disjoint or identical. And moreover, union of all the right cosets of  $H$  in  $G$  is  $G$ .

**Example:** Number of elements in any two right cosets of a subgroup are same. That is if  $H$  is a subgroup of a group  $G$  and  $a, b \in G$ , then  $|Ha| = |Hb|$ .

Solution: Let define a function  $f: Ha \rightarrow Hb$  by  $f(ha) = hb$ . Then  $f$  is an one-one and onto function.

- (i) Let  $x, y$  are in  $Ha$  and  $f(x) = f(y)$ . There exist  $h_1, h_2$  in  $H$  such that  $x = h_1a$ , and  $y = h_2a$ . As,  $f(x) = f(y)$  we have  $f(h_1a) = f(h_2a)$ , that is  $h_1b = h_2b \Rightarrow h_1 = h_2$ , by right cancelation law. Now  $h_1 = h_2 \Rightarrow h_1a = h_2a \Rightarrow x = y$ . Thus  $f$  is one-one.

- (ii) Let  $y \in Hb \Rightarrow y = hb$  for some  $h \in H$ . Now  $ha \in Ha$  and  $f(ha) = hb = y$ . Thus  $f$  is onto.

Since there is an one-one and onto mapping from  $Ha$  to  $Hb$ , number of element are same in  $Ha$  and  $Hb$ . That is number of elements in any two right cosets of a subgroup are same.

**Lagrange's Theorem:** If  $G$  is a finite group and  $H$  is a subgroup of  $G$  then  $o(H)$  divides  $o(G)$ .

Proof: Let  $G$  be a group finite order and  $H$  is a subgroup of  $G$ . Let define a relation  $R$  on  $G$  by  $(a, b) \in R$  if and only if  $ab^{-1} \in H$ . Then  $R$  is an equivalence relation on  $G$ . Also, the equivalence class of an element  $a$  is  $Ha$ . That is  $[a]_R = Ha$ . Moreover, we have  $|Ha| = o(H)$ . Since equivalence relation gives a partition to the set, let  $[a_1]_R, [a_2]_R, \dots, [a_n]_R$  are disjoint equivalence classes such that

$$\begin{aligned} G &= [a_1]_R \cup [a_2]_R \cup \dots \cup [a_n]_R. \\ \Rightarrow o(G) &= |[a_1]_R| + |[a_2]_R| + \dots + |[a_n]_R|. \\ \Rightarrow o(G) &= |Ha_1| + |Ha_2| + \dots + |Ha_n|. \\ \Rightarrow o(G) &= |H| + |H| + \dots + |H|. \\ \Rightarrow o(G) &= n o(H). \end{aligned}$$

This completes the proof.

**Normal Subgroup:** A subgroup of a group  $G$  is said to be normal subgroup of  $G$  if  $aH = Ha \forall a \in G$ .

**Example:**  $H = \{1, -1\}$  is a normal subgroup of group  $G = \{1, -1, i, -i\}$ . It is clear that  $Ha = aH \forall a \in G$ .

**Example:** Every subgroup of an abelian group is normal.

**Group Homomorphism:** Let  $(G, *)$  and  $(G', \#)$  be two groups. A mapping  $f: G \rightarrow G'$  is called a homomorphism if

$$f(a * b) = f(a) \# f(b).$$

**Example:** Let  $(\mathbb{Z}, +)$  and  $(2\mathbb{Z}, +)$  be the group of integers and even integers under usual addition. Define a map  $f: \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow 2\mathbb{Z}$  by  $f(x) = 2x, \forall x \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Then  $f$  is a homomorphism.



**Solution:** First, we check  $f$  is well defined. Now  $x = y \Rightarrow 2x = 2y \Rightarrow f(x) = f(y)$ . Thus  $f$  is well defined. Now,  $f(x + y) = 2(x + y) \Rightarrow f(x + y) = 2x + 2y \Rightarrow f(x + y) = f(x) + f(y)$ . Hence,  $f$  is a homomorphism.

**Example:** Let  $G = (\mathbb{Z}, +)$ .  $f: G \rightarrow G$  defined by  $f(x) = x + 3$ . Examine  $f$  is a homeomorphism or not.

**Solution:** Now  $f(x + y) = x + y + 3$  and  $f(x) + f(y) = (x + 3) + (y + 3) = x + y + 6$ . Thus  $f(x + y) \neq f(x) + f(y)$ . Hence,  $f$  is not a homomorphism.

**Example:** Let  $G = \mathbb{R} - \{0\}$ . Then  $G$  is group under usual multiplication. A map  $f: G \rightarrow G$  defined by  $f(x) = |x|$ . Check  $f$  is a homomorphism or not.

**Solution:**  $f(xy) = |xy| = |x||y| = f(x)f(y)$ . Hence,  $f$  is a homomorphism.

**Theorem:** If  $f: G \rightarrow G'$  is a homomorphism, then

$$(i) f(e) = e'$$

$$(ii) f(x^{-1}) = (f(x))^{-1}$$

$$(iii) f(x^n) = (f(x))^n$$

**Proof:**

(i) We have,

$$e \cdot e = e$$

$$\Rightarrow f(ee) = f(e)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(e)f(e) = f(e)e'$$

$$\Rightarrow f(e) = e'. \text{ (By cancellation law)}$$

(ii) Again,

$$xx^{-1} = e = x^{-1}x$$

$$\Rightarrow f(xx^{-1}) = f(e) = f(x^{-1}x)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(x)f(x^{-1}) = e = f(x^{-1})f(x)$$

$$\Rightarrow (f(x))^{-1} = f(x^{-1})$$

(iii) Let  $n$  be a positive integer such that

$$x^n = x \cdot x \dots x \text{ (} n \text{ times)}$$

$$\Rightarrow f(x^n) = f(x) \cdot f(x) \dots f(x) \text{ (} n \text{ times)}$$

$$\Rightarrow f(x^n) = (f(x))^n$$

**Example:** Let  $G = (\mathbb{R} - \{0\}, \cdot)$  and  $G' = (\mathbb{R}, +)$  be two groups. A map  $f: G \rightarrow G'$  by  $f(x) = x^2$ . Check  $f$  is a homomorphism or not.

**Solution:** Now  $f(xy) = (xy)^2 = x^2y^2$ , but  $f(x) + f(y) = x^2 + y^2$ . So  $f(xy) \neq f(x) + f(y)$ . Therefore,  $f$  is not a homomorphism.

**Example:** If  $G = (\mathbb{R} - \{0\}, \cdot)$  is a group and a map  $f: G \rightarrow G$  defined by  $f(x) = x^2$  then check  $f$  is a homomorphism or not.

**Solution:**  $f(x \cdot y) = (xy)^2 = x^2y^2 = f(x) \cdot f(y)$ . Hence,  $f$  is a homeomorphism.

**Example:** Let  $G = (\mathbb{R}, +)$  and  $G' = (\mathbb{R} - \{0\}, \cdot)$  be two groups. A map  $f: G \rightarrow G'$  defined by  $f(x) = e^x$ . Check whether  $f$  is homomorphism or not.

**Solution:**  $f(x + y) = e^{x+y} = e^x e^y = f(x) \cdot f(y)$ . Hence,  $f$  is a homomorphism.

### Rings, integral domains and Fields

Let  $R$  be a non empty set. Let there be two binary compositions, called addition and multiplication, defined on it. Then  $R$  is called a **ring** if it is

- (i) an abelian group with respect to addition
- (ii) a semigroup with respect to multiplication
- (iii) the two distributive laws hold: for  $a, b, c \in R$

$$a(b + c) = ab + ac$$

$$(b + c)a = ba + ca$$

If we write explicitly, then the definition of ring will read as follows: A nonempty set  $R$  with two binary operations, addition and multiplication, defined on it is called a ring if for all  $a, b, c \in R$

- (i)  $a + b \in R$
- (ii)  $(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$
- (iii) There is an element  $0 \in R$  (called zero element) such that  $a + 0 = 0 + a = a$

- (iv) There is an element  $-a \in R$  such that  $a + (-a) = (-a) + a = 0$
- (v)  $a + b = b + a$
- (vi)  $ab \in R$
- (vii)  $a(bc) = (ab)c$
- (viii)  $a(b + c) = ab + ac$ ;  $(b + c)a = ba + ca$

A ring  $R$  is said to be a **ring with unit element** (or a ring with identity) if there is an element  $1 \in R$  called the multiplicative identity, such that

$$a1 = 1a = a; \forall a \in R.$$

A ring  $R$  is called a **commutative ring** if the multiplication in  $R$  satisfies the commutative property, i.e. if

$$ab = ba; \forall a, b \in R.$$

A ring  $R$  is called a **division ring** (or a skew field) if all its nonzero elements form a group under multiplication.

A commutative division ring is called a **field**. In other words, a ring  $R$  is called a field if all its nonzero elements form an abelian group under multiplication.

If  $R$  is a commutative ring, then  $0 \neq a \in R$  is said to be a **zero divisor** if there exists an element  $0 \neq b \in R$  such that  $ab = 0$ .

A commutative ring is called an **integral domain** if it has no zero divisors.

### Examples of Rings, integral domains and Fields

- (a) The following are rings with respect to usual addition and multiplication
  - (i) The singleton set consisting only of the number 0
  - (ii) The set  $\mathbb{Z}$  of all integers
  - (iii) The set of all even integers
  - (iv) The set  $\mathbb{Q}$  of all rational numbers
  - (v) The set  $\mathbb{R}$  of all real numbers
  - (vi) The set  $\mathbb{C}$  of all complex numbers

It should be noted that the set in (ii) is an integral domain and the sets in (iv), (v) and (vi) are in fact fields.

- (b) Any ring of subsets of a set  $U$  is a ring with respect to addition and multiplication defined by  $A + B = A \triangle B$  and  $AB = A \cap B$ . The fact that a ring of sets is actually a ring is the reason for the name ring of sets.

(c) Let  $m$  be a positive integer and  $\mathbb{Z}_m = \{0, 1, \dots, m - 1\}$ . In  $\mathbb{Z}_m$  define a sum  $a + b$  and the product  $ab$  to be the remainders obtained when their usual sum and product are divided by  $m$ . Then  $\mathbb{Z}_m$  is a ring with respect to the addition and multiplication define as above. If  $m$  is any positive integer, then  $\mathbb{Z}_m$  is not always an integral domain. For example, if  $m = 6$ , then observe that  $2 \cdot 3 = 0$  and also  $3 \cdot 4 = 0$ .

(d) The set  $\{a + b\sqrt{2} : a, b \in \mathbb{Z}\}$  is a ring under usual addition and multiplication of real numbers

(e) Let  $\mathbb{Z}(i) = \{a + ib : a, b \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ . Note that a complex number of the form  $a + ib$  where  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ , is called a Gaussian integer and  $\mathbb{Z}(i)$  is called the set of all Gaussian integers.  $\mathbb{Z}(i)$  is a ring under the usual addition and multiplication of complex numbers. More precisely it is an integral domain called the domain of Gaussian integers.

(f) The set  $\{a + b\sqrt{2} : a, b \in \mathbb{Q}\}$  is a ring under usual addition and multiplication of real numbers

(g) Let  $\mathbb{R}$  denote the field of all real numbers. Then  $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$  is a field with respect to addition and multiplication of real defined as follows

$$(a, b) + (c, d) = (a + c, b + d);$$

$$(a, b) \cdot (c, d) = (ac - bd, ad + bc).$$

Note that  $(0, 0)$  and  $(1, 0)$  are the additive and multiplicative identity respectively.

If  $(a, b) \neq (0, 0) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$ , then  $(a, b)^{-1} = \left(\frac{a}{a^2+b^2}, \frac{-b}{a^2+b^2}\right)$  since

$$(a, b) \cdot \left(\frac{a}{a^2 + b^2}, \frac{-b}{a^2 + b^2}\right) = (1, 0).$$

(h) The set  $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$  is a ring under addition and multiplication defined as follows:

$$(a, b) + (c, d) = (a + c, b + d);$$

$$(a, b) \cdot (c, d) = (ac, bd)$$

It is neither an integral domain nor a field. It is not an integral domain because

$$(1, 0) \cdot (0, 1) = (0, 0), \text{ but } (1, 0) \neq (0, 0) \text{ and } (0, 1) \neq (0, 0).$$

(i) The set of all  $n$  –rowed square matrices form a ring under addition and multiplication of matrices. This is not an integral domain. First observe that matrix multiplication is not commutative. For if  $n = 2$  then

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ but } \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Also, by taking  $n = 2$  we observe that

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

This set is also not a skew field. Because any non-zero square matrix  $A$  need not have a multiplicative inverse. This holds if and only if  $A$  is non-singular.

- (j) Let  $M$  be the set of all  $2 \times 2$  matrices of the form  $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ -\bar{\beta} & \bar{\alpha} \end{pmatrix}$  where  $\alpha, \beta$  are complex numbers and  $\bar{\alpha}, \bar{\beta}$  are respectively the complex conjugates of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ . Then  $M$  is skew-field under addition and multiplication of matrices. If  $A = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ -\bar{\beta} & \bar{\alpha} \end{pmatrix}$  is a nonzero element of  $M$  and if  $D = \alpha\bar{\alpha} + \beta\bar{\beta}$ , then the matrix  $B = \frac{1}{D} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta \\ -\bar{\beta} & \bar{\alpha} \end{pmatrix}$  is the inverse of  $A$  and belongs to  $M$ .

**Example:** Let  $\mathbb{Z}_4 = \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$  be ring under addition and multiplication modulo 4.  $2 \cdot 2 = 0$  but  $2 \neq 0$ . Therefore 2 is a zero divisor.

**Example:**  $\mathbb{Z}_7 = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$  is a ring under addition and multiplication modulo 7. There is no any  $0 \neq a, 0 \neq b \in \mathbb{Z}_7$  such that  $ab = 0$ . Hence, there is no any zero divisor in  $\mathbb{Z}_7$ .

**Example:**  $\mathbb{Z}_5 = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$  is an integral domain. There is no any  $0 \neq a, 0 \neq b \in \mathbb{Z}_5$  such that  $ab = 0$ .

**Example:** The ring  $\mathbb{Z}_p$  of integers modulo a prime  $p$  is an integral domain.

**Example:** The ring  $\mathbb{Z}_n$  of integers modulo  $n$  is not a integral domain when  $n$  is not a prime.

**Example:** The ring  $M_2(\mathbb{Z})$  of matrices of order 2 over the integers is not an integral domain.

**Theorem:** In a ring, the following results hold:

(i)  $a \cdot 0 = 0 \cdot a = 0, \forall a \in R$ . (ii)  $a(-b) = (-a)b = -ab, \forall a, b \in R$ .

(iii)  $a(b - c) = ab - ac, \forall a, b, c \in R$ . (iv)  $(-a)(-b) = ab, \forall a, b \in R$ .

Proof: (i)  $a \cdot 0 = a \cdot (0 + 0)$  (since  $0 \in R$ )

$$\Rightarrow a \cdot 0 = a \cdot 0 + a \cdot 0 \quad (\text{by distributive})$$

$$\Rightarrow a \cdot 0 + 0 = a \cdot 0 + a \cdot 0$$

$$\Rightarrow 0 = a \cdot 0 \quad (\text{by cancellation with respect to } (R, +))$$

$$\Rightarrow a \cdot 0 = 0$$

(ii) By (i),  $a \cdot 0 = 0$ .

$$\Rightarrow a(b + (-b)) = a.b + a.(-b) = 0 \quad (\text{by distributive})$$

$$\Rightarrow a.(-b) = -ab.$$

(iii) Now,  $a(b - c) = a(b + (-c)) = a.b + a.(-c)$  (by distributive)

$$\Rightarrow a(b - c) = ab - ac.$$

(iv) Finally,  $(-a)(-b) = -(a(-b)) = -(-ab).$

\*\*\*\*\*